G.P.R.N.

2006

DEFENSE WHITE PAPER

The Ministry of National Defense
The Republic of Korea

www.mnd.go.kr

5397
820

DEFENSE WHITE PAPER
2006

The Ministry of National Defense
The Republic of Korea

www.mnd.go.kr

A Message from the Minister

Looking back on the past year, I believe 2006 was meaningful in that the ROK Armed Forces made extensive achievements for the development of national defense capabilities while maintaining a stable national defense posture. In particular, the enactment of the National Defense Reform Act was significant in that the Act laid out a legal and systemic basis to push ahead with a more future-oriented national defense. Hence, the Act makes possible a remarkable reform of the national defense system that has existed for more than 50 years.

The ROK Armed Forces currently face numerous challenges in a rapidly changing security environment. In July and October 2006, the DPRK test-fired missiles and carried out nuclear tests despite repeated warnings from the ROK government and the international community. As a result, the actions caused grave concern and alarm by threatening peace and security in Northeast Asia.

The DPRK's nuclear weapons development has affected our national defense posture in no small way. In particular, there is a spectrum of uncertainty, associated with resolving the DPRK nuclear issue, that can confront us in various shapes and forms.

The ROK government and the international community have made multifaceted efforts toward a peaceful resolution of the DPRK nuclear issue. To support these efforts,the ROK Armed Forces should provide strong military backing to achieve a practical resolution of the DPRK nuclear problem. In addition, there is a mountain of work to do regarding other security concerns and issues.

One of the purposes of national defense reform is to meet civil society's demand for developing the ROK military into an advanced one by effectively improving national defense management capabilities

in line with advances in science and information technology.

National defense reform should continuously make progress, without setbacks, because it is a national task-- one that guarantees our national survival and prosperity in the 21st century. Also, it might be a golden opportunity to transform the ROK military into an advanced, elite, and strong force.

At this year's ROK-US Security Consultative Meeting, the two countries reached an agreement to transform the existing US-led and ROK-supported system to a "supporting-supported" system in defense of the Korean Peninsula. Many tasks remain in order to achieve such a new framework for the future ROK-US alliance. We should clearly recognize that we have reached a point whereby properly managing this transformation process encourages development of an allied defense posture that best suits the changed security environment. In addition, we should take this opportunity to upgrade our alliance to a higher level.

The strength of our national defense comes from the people. Popular support and trust is a prerequisite for our armed forces to grow stronger. Our armed forces will do their best to accomplish their missions and tasks in recognition of the importance of gaining popular support and trust. Moreover, we should actively cope with the challenges ahead by recognizing that these challenges could prove to be critical issues in shaping the destiny of our national defense.

This year's Defense White Paper purports to contain such will and effort. I expect that the Defense White Paper 2006 to provide an opportunity to reach consensus on national defense policies as well as broader popular understanding of the present and future of our armed forces. Lastly, I sincerely ask for the people's continued interest in and support for our national defense.

December 29, 2006

Minister of National Defense Kim, Jang Soo

Table of Contents

Chapter 1. Changes and Challenges in the Security Environment 1

1. Global Security Environment 2
2. Security Situation in Northeast Asia 7
3. North Korean Situation and Military Threat 15

Chapter 2. Basic Tenets of the National Defense Policy 27

1. National Security Strategy Guidelines of the Participatory Government 28
2. Objectives and Implementation Directions of the National Defense Policy 31
3. Defense Reform to Build an Advanced, Elite, and Strong Force 38

Chapter 3. Establishment of a Defense Posture to Safeguard Peace 49

1. Maintenance of an Omnidirectional Military Readiness 50
2. Establishment of Integrated Civil-Governmental-Military Defense Posture 65
3. Combat Task-oriented Training and Exercises 70
4. Training Reserve Forces as Key Combat Units 79

Chapter 4. Strengthening Future-Oriented Defense Capabilities 85

1. Buildup of an Elite Military Force 86
2. Development of the Future-oriented ROK-US Alliance 97
3. Promotion of External Military Cooperation 109
4. Mitigation of Inter-Korean Military Tension 129

Chapter 5. Establishment of an Advanced Defense Management System 137

1. Retention and Management of Elite Defense Manpower 138
2. Reform of Defense Resource Management 162
3. Efficient Allocation and Execution of Defense Budget 172
4. Pursuit of Defense Digitization 180
5. Settlement of a New Barrack Culture 188

Chapter 6. National Defense with the People 199

1. Enhancement of the People's Convenience 200
2. Improvement of the Administration of Conscription 213
3. Repatriation Effort for POW/MIAs 218
4. Operation of an Environmentally-friendly Force 221
5. Revitalization of National Defense Publicity 225

Appendices

1. Military Capabilities of Neighboring Countries / 232

2. Comparison of Economic Indices of South and North Korea / 234

3. North Korean Annual Military Expenditures (1991–2006) / 234

4. Chronology of Major Events Related to the North Korean Nuclear Issue / 235

5. North Korea's Missile Development and Specifications / 239

6. The National Defense Reform Act / 240

7. The 38th ROK-US SCM Joint Communique / 250

8. Status of the UN Peacekeeping Operations / 254

9. Status of the Dispatch of ROK Troops / 256

10. Comparison of Military Expenditures of Major Countries / 257

11. Annual Government and Defense Budgets / 258

12. Comparison of Military Capabilities between ROK and DPRK / 261

13. Combined/Joint Training and Exercises / 262

14. Chronology of Inter-Korean Military Talks / 264

15. The 37th ROK-US SCM Joint Communique / 267

16. Major International Arms Control Regimes / Organizations / 269

17. Organization of the Ministry of National Defense (MND) / 273

List of Acronyms

APEC: Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation

ARF: ASEAN Regional Forum

ASC: Asia Security Conference

ASEAN: Association of South-East Asian Nations

ATACMS: Army Tactical Missile System

ATCIS: Army Tactical Command Information System

AWACS: Airborne Warning and Control System

BCTP: Battle Command Training Program

BPR: Business Process Reengineering

BTL: Build-Transfer-Lease

BTO: Build-Transfer-Operate

BWC: Biological Weapons Convention

C/J LOTS: Combined/Joint Logistics Over the Shore

C4ISR: Command, Control, Communications, Computers, Intelligence, Surveillance and Reconnaissance

CDIP: Combined Defense Improvement Project

CERT: Computer Emergency Response Team

CIO: Chief Information Officer

CIS: Commonwealth of Independent States

CODA: Combined Delegated Authority

CPAS: Command Post Automation System

CPX: Command Post Exercise

CRDL: Critical Requirement Deficiency List

CRS: Command Relations Study

CSA: Comprehensive Security Assessment

CSCAP: Council for Security Cooperation in the Asia-Pacific Region

CSG: Carrier Strike Group

CWC: Chemical Weapons Convention

CWT: Customer Waiting Time

DOD: Defense Officials' Dialogue

EA: Enterprise Architecture

EASI: East Asia Strategic Initiative

EBO: Effects-Based Operations

EU: European Union

FDO: Flexible Deterrence Option

FE: Foal Eagle

FMP: Force Module Package

FOTA: Future of the ROK-US Alliance Policy Initiative

FTA: Free Trade Agreement

GPR: Global Defense Posture Review

IA: Implementing Agreement

IAEA: International Atomic Energy Agency

IO: Information Operations

IR Pointer: Infra-Red Pointer

ISP: Information Strategy Planning

JOS: Joint Operations Simulation

JSA: Joint Security Area

JVS: Joint Vision Study

KCTC: Korean Army Advanced Combat Training Center

List of Acronyms

KJCCS: Korea Joint Command & Control System

KNCCS: Korean Naval Command Control System

KNTDS: Korean Naval Tactical Data System

LAN: Local Area Network

LNWFZ-NEA: Limited Nuclear Weapon Free Zone for Northeast Asia

LPP: Land Partnership Plan

MCM: Military Committee Meeting

MCRC: Master Control & Reporting Center

MDL: Military Demarcation Line

MIMS: Military Intelligence Management System

MNF: Multi-National Forces

MOU: Memorandum of Understanding

MTCR: Missile Technology Control Regime

MTWS: Marine Training War-game Simulation

NCW: Network Centric Warfare

NEACD: Northeast Asia Cooperation Dialogue

NLL: Northern Limit Line

NPT: Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty

NSS: National Security Strategy

NVG: Night Vision Goggle

OPCW: The Organization for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons

PAC-3: Patriot Advanced Capability 3

PCRM: Policy Customer Relationship Management

PGM: Precision Guided Munitions

PKF: Peacekeeping Forces

PRT: Provincial/Regional Reconstruction Team

PSI: Proliferation Security Initiative

RCT: Repair Cycle Time

RFID: Radio Frequency Identification

RIMPAC: Rim of the Pacific Exercise

RSOI: Reception , Staging , Onward Movement and Integration

SCM: Security Consultative Meeting

SNP: South-North Pipeline

SPC: Security Policy Conference

SPI: Security Policy Initiative

TACC: Theater Air Control Center

TKP: Trans-Korea Pipeline

TOR: Terms of Reference

TPFDD: Time Phased Force Deployment Data

UA: Umbrella Agreement

UAV: Unmanned Aerial Vehicle

UFL: Ulchi Focus Lens

UNTSO: UN Truce Supervision Organization Observers

VoIP: Voice over Internet Protocol

WAN: Wide Area Network

WMD: Weapons of Mass Destruction

WRSA: War Reserve Stocks for Allies

Chapter
1

Changes and Challenges in the Security Environment

Section 1. Global Security Environment

Section 2. Security Situation in Northeast Asia

Section 3. North Korean Situation and Military Threat

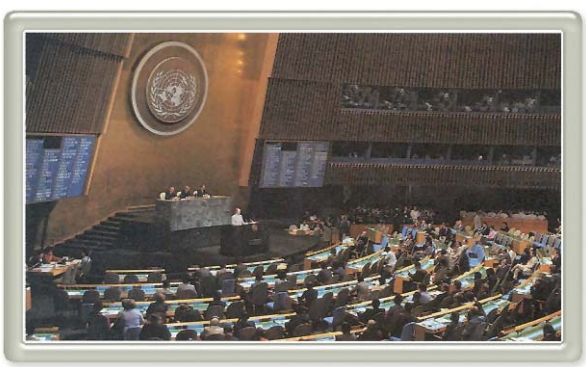
Section 1. Global Security Environment

Today's global security environment has become diverse and complex as threats to national security have become diverse and complex. While countries are trying to maximize their own national interests, they are pursuing strategic coalitions at the same time with mutual checks for stability and peace of the international community.

Since the September 11 terrorist attacks, in particular, the world has been making efforts to counter terrorism and thwart the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (WMD) in order to prevent terrorism and the spread of WMD that has been regarded as a serious threat to the peace and stability of the international community.

On the other hand, growing regional conflicts stemming from diverse causes are threatening world peace and stability.

1. Pursuing National Interests through Strategic Coalitions and Checks



The striking characteristic of the contemporary global security environment is that the nature of threats has become diverse and complex. For example, transnational and non-military threats including terrorism and proliferation of WMD has increased. Causes for conflicts that had been kept latent in the past exploded although the possibility of a large-scale war has disappeared.

In this security environment, countries in the world are making efforts to maximize their national interests. They are strengthening security capabilities not only to promote their national interests but also to shape the security environment to their favor. At the same time, they are pursuing national interests through strategic coalitions and checks.

On the other hand, the United States has taken the initiative to form a new international security order including the proliferation security initiative (PSI) as the United States has engaged the anti-terror war since the 9/11 attacks. As major countries participate in this international trend, the US-led international order is expected to continue in the future.

Russia, China, and a few leading European countries disclosed their attitudes to check the US government, which took an offensive strategy by expanding the security concept. The European Union (EU) recognized the need for their own approach to a new security environment in consideration of the US unilateral approach since the 9/11 attacks in consideration of the disputes over the Iraq War between the United States and Europe, and the issues of WMD proliferation. Accordingly, they are enacting the European Security Strategy by forming an international order on the basis of effective multilateralism, building close relationship with their neighboring countries in the EU, and taking measures to new threats stemming from nuclear proliferation efforts of certain countries.

PSI (Proliferation Security Initiative):
The PSI is the initiative to prevent proliferation of weapons of mass destruction, their delivery vehicles, and related materials by countries of concern and terrorist groups. The United States took the lead with ten other countries in Asia and in Europe to launch the PSI and currently 80 countries are participating in the PSI.

EU:
European Union

WMD:
Weapons of Mass Destruction

Most striking in the process of the new security order building is that the United States and China are competitively expanding their cooperation and exchanges with India which has recently demonstrated rapid economic growth. In March 2006, President Bush visited India and agreed with Prime Minister Manmohan Singh to strengthen bilateral strategic ties and signed the Joint Statement for the development of nuclear energy for civilian applications. Additionally, the United States agreed to sell advanced fighters to India. Such a strategic partnership between the United States and India heralds a new page for the Asian regional order. On the other hand, in Novemer, 2006 Chinese Premier Hu Jintao and Indian Prime Minister Manmohan Singh agreed to promote cooperation and improve strategic relationship by signing as many as 13 agreements.

What draws international attention in international dynamics to secure energy resources at a time of skyrocketing energy prices has emerged as a new variable in international order. The importance of energy security increased as the anxiety of stable supply of the Middle East oil arose with the growing instability due to the 9/11 terror and subsequent Iraq War. As

big power countries in the world are competing to seek new energy sources, the fluidity of corresponding regional politics is increasing accordingly.

In conclusion, countries are making coalitions to ensure peace and stability of the international community in the recent global security environment, while at the same time countries are pursuing mutual checks and cooperation to maximize their own national interests depending on the nature of issues given the security environment.

2. International Efforts to Counter Terrorism and WMD Proliferation

As countries gain easier access to the weaponization technology for WMD, with the development of cutting-edge science and technology and information telecommunications, a few countries such as Iran and North Korea are making efforts to possess WMDs in order to raise national prestige, promote economic interests, and enhance military security, etc.

▲ The terrorist attacks on the Spanish train in 2004

That certain countries are technologically capable of developing nuclear weapons and long-range missiles and can acquire components and materials necessary for the development of such weapons readily through illicit international deals has become a factor with negative impact on international security. Equally worrisome is the fact that not only minor powers, but also terrorist groups, can acquire biochemical weapons, including anthrax and sarin gas, easily because of their cheap and simple fomulas.

NSS: National Security Strategy

Furthermore, as the terrorist organization that initiated the 9/11 attacks became known to be Al Qaeda, who has an international terrorist network, the fact that it is not a country's matter but a global matter to prevent and counter the terrorism and WMD proliferation led the world to recognize the importance of international cooperation to prevent and counter the terrorism and WMD proliferation. Therefore, measures to counter terrorism and proliferation of WMD on a global level have been specified. This signifies that counter-terrorism and nonproliferation has become the core issue for international security for a considerable period of time.

For instance, in its National Security Strategy (NSS) released on March 16, 2006, the United States announced four steps to win the War on Terror: (1) prevent attacks by terrorist networks before they occur; (2) deny WMD to

rogue states and to terrorist allies who would use them without hesitation; (3) deny terrorist groups the support and sanctuary of rogue states; and (4) deny the terrorists control of any nation that they would use as a base and launching pad for terror. These steps clearly demonstrate the strong will of the United States to uproot the terrorism.

The EU has also adopted a declaration on anti-terrorism in the summit meeting which convened on March 25 and 26, 2004 and strengthened cooperation to counter terrorism by promoting information exchanges, judiciary cooperation, border control, suspension of terrorist fund, etc.

Regarding the issue of terrorism and WMD proliferation, countries in the world are strengthening international and regional cooperation in the areas such as counter-terrorism information exchanges, investigation cooperation, and detection and delivery of terrorists in order to establish the international regime for counter-terrorism and WMD nonproliferation. In addition, non-military measures to cut off terrorist funding and support the democratization process of the terror-prone countries are gaining political saliency.

International efforts to prevent proliferation of WMD are continuing under the international agreements such as the Nuclear Nonproliferation Treaty (NPT), Chemical Weapons Convention (CWC), Biological Weapons Convention (BWC), and Missile Technology Control Regime (MTCR), and by international organizations such as the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA). Moreover, the existing nonproliferation regime has been reinforced by the PSI.

NPT:
Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty

CWC:
Chemical Weapons Convention

BWC:
Biological Weapons Convention

MTCR:
Missile Technology Control Regime

IAEA:
International Atomic Energy Agency

3. Persisting Regional Instability and Local Disputes

Due to complex factors such as disputes over territory and natural resources, religious, and racial and ethnic conflicts, and secessionist independence movements, a variety of local conflicts are continuing in many places around the globe. As of December 2006, the Iraq War is continuing since March 2003, and the seed of war is remaining despite the end of the Israel and Lebanese War. The Civil War in Sudan lasting for 21 years since 1983 remains latent, at present, due to issues such as multi-ethnic compositions and power transfer. Likewise, local conflicts small and big alike are continuing in many places around the globe.

In Iraq, increasing ethnic conflicts between the Shiites and Sunnis, and conflicts among political parties to control the political power, rendered the security situation in Iraq so tense that the stabilization operation that multinational forces originally planned to conduct is facing difficulties. With the inauguration of the Hamas cabinet that does not recognize, in principle, Israel, violent conflicts erupted between the two sides and the situation became tense. Situations in the Middle East are still unstable as shown in the Israelis' invasion into the southern Lebanon and subsequent fierce battles between them.

In Central Asia, Ukraine, Kyrgyzstan, and Uzbekistan are experiencing instability in their democratization and power transfer process. Around the coastal area of the Caspian Sea, heated competition among related countries and big powers over oil and gas resources adds concerns to the existing anxiety in this region, thus destabilizing the region.

In South Asia, conflicts between India and Pakistan constitute an instability factor to the region. In the past, they experienced three large armed conflicts over Kashmir. Nevertheless, the two countries recently made diplomatic efforts to reduce tension including the prevention of armed conflicts, though they engaged in an arms competition to develop nuclear weapons and missiles.

▲ The battle between Israel and Lebanon

In summary, armed conflicts among nations are continuing due to regional instabilities even after the end of the Cold War. Local disputes resulting from races, resources and religions are continuing. Violation of human rights, refugees, poverty, and terror occurring from armed and local conflicts are becoming imminent issues for the international community to tackle.

Section 2. Security Situation in Northeast Asia

In the midst of the global trend of easing tension and increasing cooperation, economic cooperation and interdependence is deepening in Northeast Asia. However, structural conflict stemming from North Korea's nuclear issue surfaced together with conflicting factors such as the Cross Strait relations, history disputes, and territorial disputes.

While the biggest military powers of the world are concentrated in the region, countries are making efforts to modernize their military forces. Countries in the region are competing to expand their influences and thus regional instabilities arise.

1. The Regional Security Structure

Economic cooperation and interdependence is increasing in Northeast Asia. Due to China's continued economic growth, Japan's economic recovery, and Russia's political stability and economic growth, the strategic status of Northeast Asia is being enhanced. In the midst of such a trend, measures to promote economic cooperation through Free Trade Agreements (FTA) are being taken while countries in the region are strengthening multilateral security cooperation via ASEAN plus three, ASEAN Regional Forum (ARF), and Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation Forum (APEC).

On the other hand, the structure of checks and rivalry is also deepening, while countries in the region are competing for more hegemony and influence in the region. Overall, the geopolitical aspect to pursue political and military influence is gaining the upper hand over the economic and technological aspect to pursue prosperity.

While consolidating the security alliance relationship, the United States and Japan declared to jointly respond to potential security threats rising in the region. While actively supporting the US policy of anti-terrorism and nonproliferation, Japan is showing

FTA:
Free Trade Agreement

ASEAN+3:
ASEAN+Korea, China, Japan

ASEAN:
Association of South-East Asian Nations

ARF:
ASEAN Regional Forum

APEC:
Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation

moves to extend the activity sphere of its Self-Defense Forces to the world beyond the Indian Ocean and, at the same time, is pursuing "a normal military force of a normal state."

In response to the strengthening of the bilateral alliance between the United States and Japan, China and Russia have been strengthening their strategic partnership. However, China and the United States are making progress in the area of military exchanges and cooperation, while improving exchanges and cooperation in many other areas.

In conclusion, uncertainties stemming from traditional conflicts and rivalries are increasing with the remaining Cold War structure in Northeast Asia. They are exerting efforts to ensure a leading role and status in the midst of dynamic security relations among great powers in the region.

2. Current Security Issues in Northeast Asia

Northeast Asia is the region where security situations are tenser than any other region. North Korea's nuclear issue is not only the most serious threat but also challenges the security of Northeast Asia and the world. As North Korea conducted a nuclear test on October 9, 2006, the international community imposed sanctions on North Korea and North Korea reacted strongly to such sanctions. Accordingly, instability is increasing in Northeast Asian security.

The United States and Japan took measures such as financial sanctions and the PSI vis-a-vis North Korea in close coordination with each other. China and Russia are making efforts in order to implement the United Nations Security Council Resolution 1718 in spite of their opposition to full-fledged containment of North Korea.

On top of North Korea's nuclear issue, the Cross-Straits issue, diverging views on history between countries in the region, concerns about territorial claims add to regional frictions.

China adopted a political resolution to strongly oppose independence of Taiwan in accordance with the "One-China Principle" at the 4th Plenary Session of the 10th National People's

Congress on March 14, 2006 when she celebrated the first anniversary of enacting the "Anti-Secession Law." Tension across the Straits heightened because Taiwanese President Chen Shui-bian announced the intent to accomplish Taiwan's independence at any costs, one day before the National People's Congress resolution.

On the other hand, Japan's major politicians pay visits to the Yasukuni Shrine and some conservative groups beautify the past history of their invasion of Northeast Asia. This aroused concerns of neighboring countries because such behavior is detrimental to the improvement of peace in Northeast Asia.

Moreover, there remain territorial disputes such as disputes over the Senkaku (Diaoyudao for the Chinese) Islands between China and Japan, and disputes over four Northern Islands between Japan and Russia. Since the sea surrounding the Senkaku Islands is known to preserve natural gas and oil reserves, China, Japan and Taiwan claim territorial rights one another.

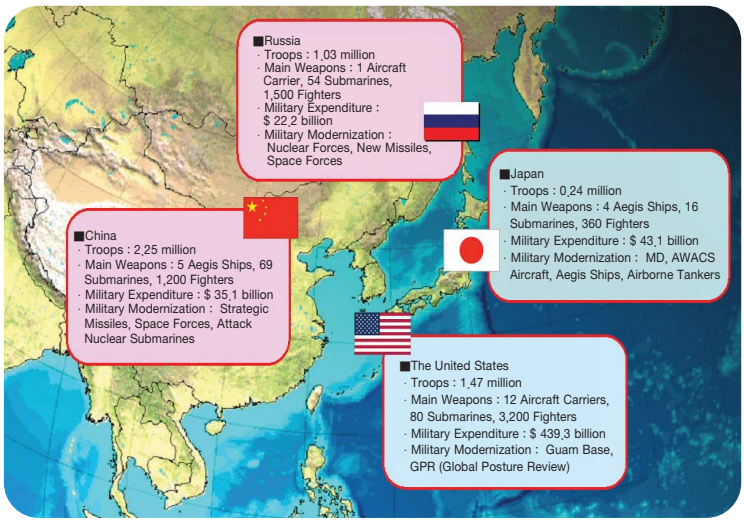
In relation to the establishment of the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), countries in the region adhere to their own positions in order to utilize the ocean space for economic benefits. Differences in their positions regarding the EEZ become factors for potential conflicts.

3. Military Trends of Major Countries in the Region

From the military point of view, the United States, Japan, China, and Russia had been competing with each other to maintain and expand their influence in this region, despite the lack of a multilateral security cooperative regime in place, unlike Europe. Furthermore, most countries in the region are pursuing military transformation and technical innovation in order to modernize and enhance their military capabilities under the new security environment. Up-to-date military posture of the four major powers surrounding the Korean Peninsula is depicted in Figure 1-1.

☞ Refer to Appendix 1 "Military Capabilities of Neighboring Countries."

〈Figure 1-1〉 Military Forces of the Four Major Powers Surrounding the Korean Peninsula



※ Source : *The Military Balance 2005-2006* (London: International Institute for Strategic Studies, Oct. 2005)

A. The United States

The United States is pursuing to restructure and realign military bases in order to deploy their forces rapidly to conflict areas in accordance with the Global Posture Review, while ensuring "strategic flexibility" of available forces at a time of contingency whenever and wherever. The United States now holds approximately 1.47 million military personnel and is restructuring

GPR: Global Posture Review

Valiant Shield Exercise: It was conducted around the Guam Island with the participation of 22,000 troops, 3 aircraft carriers including the Chinese observation team, for the first time in history.

▲ The US maneuvering exercise "Valiant Shield 2006"

its brigade-centered military structure with the concept of a joint force by pursuing military transformation continuously.

In the Northeast Asian region, the US forces are undergoing restructuring and the relocation plan of the US forces in Korea was agreed at the 2004 Security Consultative Meeting (SCM) between the Republic of Korea and the United States and is currently being implemented. On May 1st, 2006, the United States and Japan announced a document titled "the US-Japan Roadmap for Realignment Implementation" that detailed the US plans to relocate 8,000 Marines stationed in Okinawa to Guam and the US I Corps Command to Camp Zama in Japan.

SCM:
Security Consultative Meeting

At present, US forces in Northeast Asia also maintain one Carrier Strike Group (CSG), eight fighter squadrons, and Airborne Warning and Control System (AWACS). They are equipped with information collection systems and intelligence war systems that can collect, analyze, and evaluate gathered information so that they can be used readily for operations and precision strike capabilities connected to information war system.

CSG:
Carrier Strike Group

AWACS:
Airborne Warning and Control System

B. Japan

In March 2006, Japan abolished the Joint Staff Council and founded a new Joint Staff Office and made a transition to a joint operations posture. This initiative meant to allow the Chief of Staff to command and control the Ground, Maritime, and Air Self-Defense Forces, and assist the operational control by the Director-General of the Defense Agency. At the same time, the initiative strengthened the authority of the Director-General of the Defense Agency by placing the Defense Intelligence Headquarters under the direct command of the Director-General of the Defense Agency. Moreover, Japan took measures to upgrade the Defense Agency to the Ministry of Defense (MOD) by submitting the Ministry of Defense Establishment Law to the Diet in June 2006 and got it passed through the Diet on December 15th, 2006. Therefore, the status of the Self-Defense Forces has been enhanced.

The Self-Defense Forces maintain some 240,000 military personnel. To achieve the military transformation in the

intelligence sector, four reconnaissance satellites will be introduced at an early date and unmanned reconnaissance planes will be purchased later. While disbanding obsolete weapon systems, Japan is now adding advanced weapon systems such as a new model of tanks, SM-3 loaded Aegis destroyers, 13,500-ton-class helicopter vessels, and airborne tankers.

SM-3 (Standard Missile 3): Anti-ballistic missile that intercepts the ballistic missile over 100km high altitude

In response to North Korea's missile test launches of July 2006 and nuclear test of October 2006, Japan is planning to complete the ballistic missile defense system by 2010 in cooperation with the US, starting to deploy the sea-based interceptor missiles and ground-based interceptor missiles in 2007.

▲ PAC-3 (Patriot Advanced Capability-3) : The intercepter missile

In addition, Japan is expected to increase the number of joint warfare exercises in an effort to strengthen joint operation capabilities among the Ground, Maritime, and Air Self-Defense Forces and is planning to strengthen the integrated Self-Defense Force C4I system to be able to collect, transmit, and share intelligence through establishing the three-dimensional command and control system. In May 2006, Japan also agreed to restructure US Forces in Japan (USFJ) so as to strengthen interoperability and joint operation capabilities with USFJ.

MD (Missile Defense): The MD system is a three-fold defense system against ballistic missiles with which a hypothetical enemy country attacks. A defending country intercepts the incoming missile with the SM-3 interceptor missile from the Aegis ships at the first stage, intercepts the incoming missile with the ground based interceptor missile at the second stage in case of the failure at the first stage, and defends from the incoming missile with the Patriot Advanced Capability-3 missile at the final stage.

C. China

China's military strategy is "to win local wars under conditions of advanced technology" and is to pursue informationization and mechanization. The People's Liberation Army (PLA) seeks to build a strong military force enhancing defense-related science and technology, by restructuring military structure, and by strenthening total war conducting capabilities. Based on those strategic concepts, China is continuously pursuing military modernization and increasing defense expenditure based on rapid economic growth in order to build a strong military force. The Army aims at moving from regional defense to trans-regional mobility. The Navy aims at a gradual extension of the strategic depth for offshore defensive operation. The Air Force aims at having long-distance operation capabilities. In addition, the PLA ensures that it will be

well prepared for information warfare.

On the other hand, China reduced 200,000 troops between 2003 and 2005. The PLA currently holds 2.25 million troops. On March 4th, 2006, China announced the defense expenditure of $35.1 billion (283.8 billion yuan) with growth rate of 14.7 percent relative to the previous year in the National People's Congress. The defense expenditure amounts to 7.43 percent of the total government budget and 1.36 percent of the GDP.

▲ Dong Feng-3 missile

In Chinese defense expenditures, manpower costs, maintenance costs, and equipment costs are included, whereas costs for research and development, weapon procurement, and military business activities are not included. The U.S. Defense Department's annual Report on Chinese Military Power (May, 2006) estimates that the actual Chinese defense spending amounts to $70-105 billion .

For force improvement, China is developing strategic nuclear missiles. China's ground force is expanding the ground air corps and seeks to establish the mobile tactical missile units in the southeast region. The PLA Navy (PLAN) a improved its near-sea defensive operational capabilities by importing eleven Kilo-class submarines and three Sovremenny-class destroyers from Russia. It is currently known that it has almost completed building four more Luhai-class destroyers.

Moreover, the Navy builds strategic nuclear submarines that can carry Jurang-II type ballistic missiles with the range of 8,000 km and will commission three of them by 2010.

▲ Sovremenny-class destroyer

The PLA Air Force (PLAAF) imported advanced fighters such as Russian Su-27 and Su-30 fighters and conducts their licensed production through technology transfer from Russia. As of August 2006, China's air force is conducting test flights of Kongjing 2000 AWACS and is trying to expand the radius of air operations by acquiring 10 more air tankers.

▲ Su-27 (Flanker)

D. Russia

Russia seeks to restore its stature as a superpower by enhancing its military power through building up its military capabilities qualitatively and restructuring. In 2005, Russia shifted from a five service system consisting of ground, navy, air force, strategic force, and space force to three services (ground, naval, and air), and three independent corps (strategic missile force, space force, and airborne force).

By 2006, Russia reduced its troops from 1.2 million to 1.03 million and it will maintain such a troop level. While Russia will maintain the combined system of conscript and contract in the foreseeable future, it will shift to an all-volunteer system in the long run. The number of soldiers who are serving in the army on a contract basis amounts to 55 percent of the total troops and the number will increase to 70 percent by 2008.

▲ Topol-M missile

In the case of strategic weapons, their numbers decreased. Russia maintains a rapid response posture by deploying new mobile Topol-M ICBMs. Bulava (SS-NX-30) SLBMs, which is a modified version of the Topol-M, for the use of sea-based launch are under development and will be deployed to strategic nuclear submarines in 2008. At the same time, Russia pursues to have strategic deterrent capabilities by upgrading the Tu-160 Blackjack fighters.

Section 3. North Korean Situation and Military Threat

In the 2006 New Year' s Joint Editorial, North Korea stressed that the essence of the national policy is to improve the living conditions of its populace and promote economic development by focusing on the "military-first politics" and the "strong and prosperous socialist nation-building."

However, North Korea' s isolation from the international community deepens due to its illicit activities including counterfeit money and cigarettes, missile test launches, and a nuclear test in addition to worsening relations between the two Koreas.

In the military aspect, North Korea' s quantitatively favorable conventional military power and continued development of weapons of mass destruction including nuclear and missiles still pose the greatest threat to the security of the Korean Peninsula and the Northeast Asian region.

1. North Korea' s Current Situation

A. Domestic Situation

▲ Military-civilian ceremony for the successful nuclear test on the Kim Il-sung Square

Under the banner of the "military-first politics," North Korea is striving to stabilize the regime with Chairman of the National Defense Committee, Kim Jong-il at the epicenter of the regime. North Korea is making efforts to maintain the regime by reorganizing the party-government apparatus and by setting up a new economic development strategy. After the nuclear test, North Korea sought to

cement internal unity and promote national pride by holding a military-civilian ceremony in order to celebrate its successful nuclear test.

On the economic front, since North Korea has been suffering from the chronic shortage of food and energy, North Korea is trying to conduct economic reform and construct social infrastructure in order to overcome such shortages. North Korea emphasized the importance of increased production of agricultural products and necessities of life in order to improve basic living conditions of the people and build social infrastructure for sustained economic development. Nevertheless, economic conditions aggravated recently due to both sanctions imposed by the international community after North Korea's nuclear test and natural disasters such as flooding.

☞Refer to Appendix 2 "Comparison of Economic Indices of South & North Korea."

In the meanwhile, the North Korean government is tightening the society in order to shut down the inflow of external information resulting from increasing exchanges with the outside world and curbing visits to North Korea by members of the non-governmental organizations (NGO). North Korea is also intensifying ideological indoctrination of its populace and internal control in order to prevent deviant behaviors and defectors.

▲ Chairman of the National Defence Committee, Kim Jong-il's visit to a military base

On the military front, Chairman Kim Jong-il has increased significantly visits to military bases, since North Korea rejected attending the Six Party Talks in November 2005 (from 30 times between January and October 2005 to 64 times between November 2005 and June 2006). It is assessed that Chairman Kim Jong-il's activities are meant to encourage the North Korean military to strengthen their war preparedness in case of worsening situations including additional sanctions led by the United States, and to consolidate unity within North Korean society by instigating loyalty.

The North Korean military seeks to develop missiles by making test launches of new surface-to-surface missiles and ground-to-sea missiles. At the same time, the military seeks to strengthen core combat capabilities such as the Cheonma tanks and the long-range artillery munitions through test-firing those munitions.

In order to strengthen the state of readiness, the North Korean military conducted mechanized maneuver exercises, joint landing exercises in the East and West Sea, and reconnaissance flights over the West Sea.

B. Foreign Policy

North Korea and the United States disclosed fundamental differences on how to resolve North Korea's nuclear issue. Their mutual relations aggravated due to North Korea's nuclear test in defiance of Washington's warnings. It is expected that the North's improvement of relations with the United States will depend on how the Six Party Talks will resolve North Korea's nuclear issue. North Korea strongly denounced Japan for its focus on the abduction issue, conservative tendency, and efforts to build a missile defense system. Friction between North Korea and Japan is growing after Japan took measures to intensify sanctions on the North after the North's missile test launches and nuclear test.

On the other hand, North Korea is trying to obtain support from China and Russia through bilateral summit meetings and exchanges of high level officials of the party, government, and the military. Nevertheless, diplomatic conflicts between them occurred because China and Russia agreed to the UN Security Council resolution that stipulated sanctions against North Korea after Pyongyang's nuclear test.

C. Policy toward South Korea

Since the June 15th 2000 inter-Korean summit, Pyongyang pursues economic interests through South-North

▲ Reunion of separated families

exchanges and cooperation programs such as the Gaeseong Industrial Complex and the Mt. Geumgang tourism project while maintaining government-to-government contacts including ministerial talks. On the other hand, North Korea conspires to split South Korean society in the name of national unity and to pit South Korea against the United States by agitating anti-American struggles and insisting upon withdrawal of US forces from Korea.

As noted above, North Korea is very active in securing economic benefits from the South-North exchanges and cooperation. However, North Korea shows lukewarm attitude when it comes to the issues like tension reduction and military confidence-building leading to the peace building on the Korean Peninsula.

2. North Korea' s Military Policy, Strategy, and Command Organization

A. Military Policy and Strategy

North Korea's Four-point Military Guidelines:
1. Fortification of the entire nation
2. Armament of the entire populace
3. Modernization of military equipment
4. Conversion of all servicemen into cadres

Since its adoption of the "Four-point Military Guidelines" as the backbone of the military policy in 1962, North Korea has been preparing for a war for a substantial period, and is expected to continue such military policy. North Korea is continuously enhancing its military capabilities by investing national resources primarily on defense in spite of worsening economic problems.

In light of conditions of the Korean Peninsula, North Korea's military strategy intends to win the war within a short period of time with surprise and breakthrough warfare before the arrival of US reinforcements. The core of its military strategy is to execute a surprise attack at an early stage, to grasp the military initiative combined with a warfare strategy including regular and irregular warfare, and to expand the initial victory by concentrating firepower and mechanized and self-propelled maneuver units. To do so, major combat capabilities are deployed to the south of the Pyongyang-Wonsan line.

▲ North Korea's military exercises

▼

In the meantime, its actual defense expenditure is expected to exceed the number that the government officially announces.

The North Korean Supreme People's Assembly announced in the 4th meeting of their 11th term that its 2006 defense expenditure takes up 15.9 percent of the national budget. Given the unique nature of the North Korean regime and budget system, actual defense expenditure is expected to amount to 30 percent of the Gross National Income (GNI).

It is known that the defense expenditure is not only covered by the official defense budget but also supplemented by the military economy (secondary economy), arms sales, and foreign currency earning activities by military units.

☞ Refer to Appendix 3 "North Korea's Annual Defense Expenditure."

B. Military Command Organization

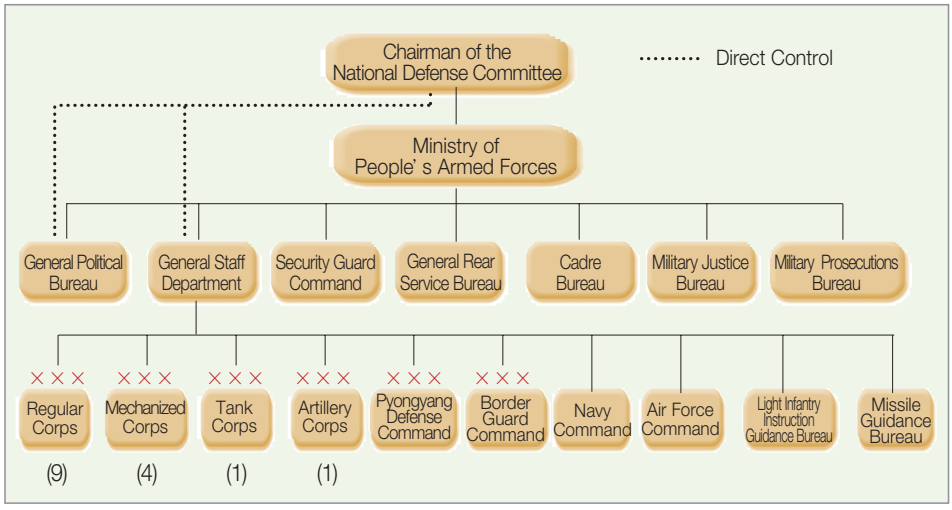
The National Defense Committee (NDC) is the highest military command organization in North Korea. The Constitution stipulates that the National Defense Committee be the entity which decides and supervises overall defense programs.

The Ministry of People's Armed Forces exercises the authority to administer military affairs including military diplomacy, logistics, and military finance, and to represent the military externally. The

General Political Bureau supervises the Workers' Party organs within the military and relevant political indoctrination programs, while the General Staff Department exercises actual operational control over the military under the unified military system.

Though the stature and functions of the Ministry of People's Armed Forces weakened relatively as the Chairman of the NDC, Kim Jong-il directly controls the Minister of People's Armed Forces, Director of General Political Bureau, and Chief of General Staff, the Ministry still represents the military externally. The Ministry of Armed Forces is placed under the NDC and North Korea's military command structure is represented in Figure 1-2.

〈Figure 1-2〉 North Korea's Military Command Organization Chart



3. Organization, Equipment and Deployment

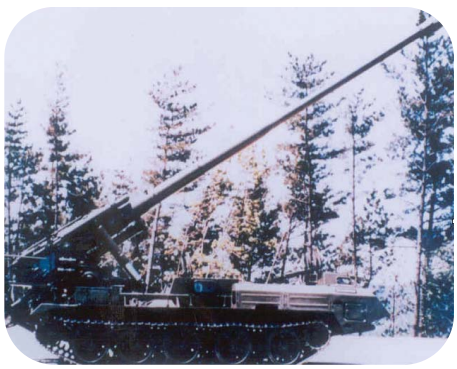
A. Army

The North Korean army consists of a total of 19 corps level units, in which there are nine frontal and rear corps, four mechanized corps, one tank corps, one artillery corps, the

Pyongyang Defense Command, Border Guard Command, Missile Guidance Bureau, and Light-infantry Instruction Bureau. Major combat units comprise more than 170 divisions and brigades including 75 infantry divisions (including instruction divisions), 30 artillery brigades, 10 tank brigades, 20 mechanized brigades, 25 special warfare brigades, and 10 other brigades.

▲ Cheonma-class tanks

The North deployed approximately seventy percent of its ground forces along the south of the Pyongyang and Wonsan line, positioning four corps in the front with one tank corps, two mechanized corps, and one artillery corps in the rear. The massive forces deployed forward enable the North to initiate a standing start attack without redeployment in the event of contingency.



▲ 170 mm self-propelled artillery

Out of the North's military offensive capabilities, T-50 tanks constitute major sources of threat. To upgrade those tanks, the North replaced the main artillery part of the existing T-62 tanks and attached response armors to those and produced and deployed Cheonma-class tanks. In particular, 170 mm self-propelled artillery and 240 mm multiple rocket launchers deployed in the frontline are capable of carrying out massive surprise bombardment against the Seoul metropolitan area from their current locations.

Additionally, it is expected that North Korean special warfare units comprising around 120,000 troops including those of frontline special warfare units will infiltrate into the entire area of the South and will plunge the rear areas of the South into chaos. If the North uses underground tunnels located at major access roads in the front to invade the South together with surprise attack, the surprise effect will likely double.

〈Figure 1-3〉 The North Korean Army's Holdings of Major Weapons

Tanks
over 3,700
units

Armored Vehicles
over 2,100
units

Field Artillery
over 8,500
units

Air Defense
Weapons
over 4,800
units

River-Crossing
Equipment
(K-61/S-type floating
bridges)
over 970/2,200
units

B. Navy

The North Korean Navy consists of two fleet Commands in the East Sea and the West Sea respectively, twelve squadrons, and two maritime sniper brigades under the central control of the Navy Command. The current holdings of major naval vessels are shown in Figure 1-4.

〈Figure 1-4〉 Vessels of the North Korean Navy

Submarines
(Submersibles)
More than 60
units

Surface
Combatants
More than 420
units

Landing Ships
More than 260
units

Minesweepers
More than 30
units

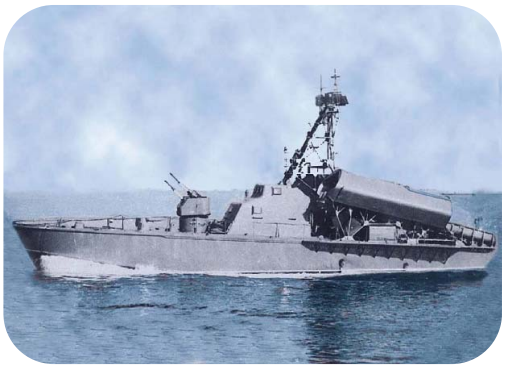
Others
More than 30
units

※ Army patrol boats (approx. 160) are not included.

▲ *Sango-class* submarine

▲ *Romeo-class* submarine

Among its warships, surface combatants comprise mostly small-sized, high-speed vessels including light frigates, patrol ships, guided missile boats, torpedo boats and fire support boats. Among those, guided missile boats carry two to four surface-to-surface missiles. Currently, 60 percent of combatants remain deployed in forward naval bases.



▲ Komar-class guided missile ship

North Korea holds 60 submarines including Romeo-class and Sango (Shark)-class submarines and over 10 Yugo-class submersibles. These can perform missions of laying mines, attacking surface ships, and supporting operations by special warfare units. Support ships include landing vessels such as landing ships, high-speed landing craft, and landing craft air cushioned (LCAC), as well as minesweepers.

The Navy holds two sniper brigades and more than 260 troop transport vessels including 130 LCACs and 90 high-speed landing craft. The LCAC can maneuver at a high speed of 40 to 52 kts.

C. Air Force

The North Korean Air Force comprises four air divisions, two tactical transportation brigades, two sniper brigades, five surface-to-air missile brigades, and three radar regiments under the central control of the Air Force Command. The holdings of North Korean aircraft are shown in Figure 1-5.

〈Figure 1-5〉 Aircrafts of the North Korean Air Force

Fighters
More than 820 units

Reconnaissance Aircrafts
More than 30 units

Cargo/Trainer aircrafts (Including AN-2s)
More than 510 units

Helicopters
More than 310 units

The North Korean Air Force deploys forward around 40 percent of its aircraft to the south of the Pyongyang-Wonsan line. It also deploys major air force capabilities to the four districts in the southwest, northwest, east, northeast of the country. In particular, the North is capable of attacking deep into the South by flying AN-2s at low altitudes and low speed.

▲ MIG-29 fighter

The air bases include twenty operational bases, reserve bases, contingency runways, etc. Most of the air bases have underground hangars and shelters so as to enhance survivability. The surface-to-air missile unit deploys long-range high altitude SA-5 missiles to the east and west, while densely deploying SA-2/3 missiles to around the Demilitarized Zone, east and west coasts, and Pyongyang.

▲ SA-5 missiles

D. Reserve Forces

North Korea maintains a gigantic garrison state whose entire populace is armed in accordance with the "Four-point Military Guidelines." At present, around thirty percent of its population aged fourteen to sixty constitutes the 7.7 million reserve forces that are subject to both mobilization for war time and military training for 15 to 30 days a year.

North Korean reserve forces consist of the Reserve Training Units (620,000: men aged from 17 to 50, single women aged from 17 to 30), Worker and Peasant Red Guard Units (5,720,000) equivalent to the South Korea's Homeland Reserve Forces, Red Youth Guards (940,000: aged 14 to 16, fourth to sixth grade)

▲ Worker and Peasant Red Guard Units

which is a military organization of senior middle schools, and other paramilitary units (420,000) such as the Guard Command, Ministry of Social Security, General Bureau of Logistics Mobilization, and Speedy Youth Battle Troops.

E. Development of Strategic Weapons

(1) Nuclear Development

In the 1960s, North Korea constructed the nuclear complex in Yongbyon. In the 1970s, it concentrated its nuclear research on nuclear fuel milling, conversion, and fabrication technologies. Since the 1980s, it had completed the "nuclear fuel cycle" ranging from the acquisition of nuclear fuels to the reprocessing of spent fuels by operating the 5-megawatt reactor and reprocessing plants. At the same time, it is believed that North Korea conducted numerous explosive tests.

Nuclear Fuel Cycle: The entire process in which uranium ore is processed in a reactor after mining and milling, conversion, enrichment and fabrication and then undergoes a series of steps including reprocessing, recycling and eventual disposal as high-level waste.

It has been speculated that the North has produced one or two nuclear bombs using 10 to 14 kg of plutonium that it extracted before the 1994 Geneva Agreed Framework. Since then, it is assessed that the North could additionally obtain more than 30 kg of plutonium if it completed reprocessing of spent fuels taken out of the reactor between 2003 and 2005. On October 9th, 2006, Pyongyang conducted its nuclear test surprisingly soon after it announced the plan for a nuclear test, as international sanctions and pressures on Pyongyang got intensified after its missile test launches in July 2006.

☞ Refer to Appendix 4 "Chronology of Major Events Related to the North Korean Neclear Issue."

Meanwhile, suspicion that North Korea may have developed the highly enriched uranium (HEU) program including the introduction of relevant components of centrifugal separators has been raised. The South Korean government and concerned countries together pursue related information about the North's HEU program.

Centrifugal Separator: A device to separate U 235 and U238 using centrifugal force that occurs at the time of high spins

(2) Medium- and Long-range Missiles

In the 1970s, North Korea embarked on a project to develop

▲ Taepodong-I missile

ballistic missiles. In the mid-1980s, it successfully test-fired a Scud-B missile with the range of 300 km, which was followed by its production and operational deployment of 500 km-range Scud-Cs. In the 1990s, the North test-fired a 1,300 km-range Rodong missile and deployed those missiles for operational purposes.

In August 1998, Pyongyang unsuccessfully test-launched Taepodong-I missiles. Although the attempt failed, it is assessed that North Korea has the ability to develop medium- and long-range missiles judging from the experiment of the missile's various functions including engine combustion, multi-stage body separation, etc.

At present, Pyongyang is developing a long-range Taepodong-II missile. In July 2006, the North test-launched Taepodong-II type, Scud, and Rodong missiles, thereby raising tension on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia. The range of the Taepodong-II is expected to go beyond 6,700 km and the range will be able to be extended if the weight of the delivery body is reduced or three-stage rockets are loaded additionally.

(3) Biochemical Weapons

Declaration of Chemicalization: On December 25, 1961, Kim Il-sung ordered the North Korean military to chemicalize the North Korean armed forces and to recognize the importance of chemical warfare.

In December 1961, North Korea launched its chemical weapons development programs including research and construction of production facilities in compliance with Kim Il-sung's "Declaration of Chemicalization." It is assessed that Pyongyang has been producing poison gas and biological weapons since the 1980s.

It is believed that approximately 2,500 to 5,000 tons of a variety of agents including nerve agents remain stored in a number of facilities scattered around the country and that North Korea is able to produce biological weapons such as the bacteria of anthrax, small pox, and cholera.

Chapter
2

Basic Tenets of the National Defense Policy

Section 1. National Security Strategy Guidelines of the Participatory Government

Section 2. Objectives and Implementation Directions of the National Defense Policy

Section 3. Defense Reform to Build an Advanced, Elite, and Strong Force

Section1. National Security Strategy Guidelines of the Participatory Government

National security strategies are national activities that accomplish a nation's interests and national security objectives comprehensively and systematically by mobilizing available resources and means.

The Participatory Government derived national interests based on Constitutional ethos, established the national security objectives and the guidelines of national security strategy considering the security environments and national power, and then set up the "National Security Strategic Guidelines" as a result.

1. National Interest and National Security Objectives

National interest implies the values that a country should protect and promote to achieve its national security and prosperity continuously in the long term, and consistently under any security environment.

Under the Constitution of the Republic of Korea, the Participatory Government defined the national interest as: (1) Ensuring National Security; (2) Promotion of Liberal Democracy and Human Rights; (3) Economic Development and Promotion of Public Welfare; (4) Peaceful Unification of the Korean Peninsula; and (5) Contribution to World Peace and shared Prosperity for Mankind.

As a result, the Government safeguards the people, territory, and sovereignty to ensure the survial of the Republic; promotes democracy and basic values such as liberty, equality, and human dignity; pursues national economic prosperity and promote public welfare; develops inter-Korean relations of peaceful coexistence and achieves national unification; and expands our international role and promotes universal values.

National Security objectives are set to safeguard the national security, an essential element of our national interest. They must be attained through an accurate assesment of the current security environment and available national resources. The Government has set the following as national security objectives to promote our national interest: (1) Peace and Stability on the Korean Peninsula; (2) Common Prosperity of South and North Korea and Northeast Asia; and (3) Assurance of Public Safety.

"Peace and Stability on the Korean Peninsula" is to pursue firm security conditions and possess corresponding ability, guaranteeing enduring peace through building a peace regime on the Korean Peninsula.

"Common Prosperity of South and North Korea and Northeast Asia" is to accomplish the development of the South-North relationship based on reconciliation and cooperation and to improve collaboration in Northeast Asia in order to construct the foundation of coprosperity for countries within the region.

In addition, "Assurance of Public Safety" is to guarantee security of citizens from various security threats by expanding areas of national security to individual safety.

2. Principles of the National Security Strategy and Promotion of Cooperative Self-Reliant Defense

The Government specified the following four basic tenets of its strategies for accomplishing national security objectives, putting forward detailed guidelines for policies of each area.

First, for the "pursuit of the policy of peace and prosperity," the government will settle peace on the Korean Peninsula, pursue coprosperity of South Korea and North Korea, and build a foundation for peaceful unification.

Second, for the "conduct of balanced and pragmatic diplomacy," the government will pursue the achievement of balance in the process of policy making and execution as well as apply diplomatic flexibility to realize its security objectives.

Third, in an effort for the "promotion of cooperative self-reliant defense," the government will pursue simultaneous development

of self-reliant defense capabilities and the ROK-US alliance to establish a firm security posture.

Fourth, for the "development of comprehensive security," the government will strengthen its security competencies so that Korea can deal with external non-military threats at home and from abroad and can meet various security challenges effectively.

Non-Military Threats: The threats that result from non-military means or natural disasters by either national or non-national actors

Among these, the promotion of cooperative self-reliant defense is what the MND should realize in the defense area. The government aims at deterring North Korea's war provocations, and developing capabilities and systems to be able to defeat North Korea at wartime. The Participatory Government concentrates its efforts on a national level to promote cooperative self-reliant defense as one of the principles of the national security strategy by utilizing the ROK-US alliance and by improving external security relations.

Accordingly, the MND established a "plan of cooperative self-reliant defense" to implement the Presidential Strategic Guidelines. The MND endeavors to develop capabilities and systems by which it can take the initiative in deterring war provocations by the North, while promoting the ROK-US alliance from a future-oriented perspective and proactively taking advantage of multilateral security cooperation.

To develop self-reliant capabilities, the MND ironed out the "Defense Reform 2020" and proactively pursues to build an advanced, elite, and strong force for the 21st century.

Section 2. Objectives and Implementation Directions of the National Defense Policy

In order to attain the national security objectives in the face of rapidly changing security environments and various defense conditions, the ROK Ministry of National Defense defines national defense objectives and pursues national defense policies in a consistent and effective manner.

The present defense objectives, which were established in 1972 and revised in 1981 and in 1994, are consistent with the national security objectives and national security strategy principles set by the Participatory Government in 2004.

1. National Defense Objectives

▲ The ROK Senior Commanders' Meeting in December 2006

The MND has set the defense objectives as follows: "defending the nation from external military threats and invasion, upholding the peaceful unification, and contributing to regional stability and world peace." The specific meanings of those objectives are as follows:

First, "defending the nation from external military threats and

invasion" signifies protecting the country not only from North Korea's existing military threats but also from all potential threats. In particular, North Korea's conventional military capabilities, nuclear tests, weapons of mass destruction, and forward military deployment pose serious threats to our national security.

Second, "upholding peaceful unification" means contributing to peaceful unification of the two Koreas by deterring war, easing military tension, and bringing a permanent peace to the Korean Peninsula.

Third, "contributing to regional stability and world peace" demonstrates the ROK's determination to contribute to stability and peace in Northeast Asia by promoting cordial and cooperative military relations with neighboring countries in accordance with the ROK's national stature and security capabilities. The ROK also seeks to proactively participate in the international community's efforts to maintain the world peace, including UN peacekeeping efforts.

2. Basic Directions of the National Defense Policy

To achieve national security objectives and defense objectives, the Ministry of National Defense defined the basic directions of the national defense policy: (1) establishment of a firm defensive posture; (2) reinforcement of future-oriented defense capability; (3) building an advanced defense management system; and (4) establishment of credible image of the military.

A. Establishment of a Firm Defensive Posture

The ROK military is poised to respond immediately to any conceivable military threat or aggression and maintains a firm defense posture that can deter war provocations from the enemy, and assure absolute victory in the event of armed provocations.

In particular, on the basis of the ROK-US combined defense system that plays a pivotal role in deterring military conflicts on the Korean Peninsula, the ROK military maintains vigilant intelligence monitoring and early warning systems while continuously

developing mechanisms of crisis management and operational concepts to safeguard the security of the Seoul Metropolitan Area. These measures intend to address military threats including extensive provocation, infiltration, and limited provocation by North Korea.

The ROK is pursuing the readjustment of the US forces stationed in the country in close consultation with the United States, while strengthening combined combat capabilities and readiness. It is also making various efforts to boost its independent operational capabilities, including the reinforcement of the JCS organization.

In order to cope with the newly emerging threat of international terrorism, the ROK military maintains a posture of rapid response against any type of conceivable terrorist attacks, by the formulation and development of plans to counter such attacks. The ROK military is bolstering the system of cooperation among pertinent counter-terrorism agencies. At the same time, it is consolidating protective measures for critical infrastructure and providing professional training to counter-terrorism operational units.

In addition, the ROK military is strengthening the mental discipline of soldiers to maximize its intangible combat capability. In particular, the military is instilling a firm sense of national security into its soldiers by establishing soldiers' value system, while applying systematically various mental education programs and audio-visual aids including the Korean Forces Network (KFN)-TV and cultural activities that consider the recent changes in the security environment and the needs of the new-generation soldiers.

B. Reinforcement of Future-Oriented Defense Capabilities

To support national security objectives and ensure a firm defense posture, the ROK

military endeavors to reinforce its future-oriented defense capabilities by expanding its leading role, taking into consideration its national strategy, international stature in politics and economy, and changes in the ROK-US alliance.

Reinforcing future-oriented military capabilities comes from developing the self-reliant defense posture while utilizing the alliance and external military cooperation wisely. The self-reliant defense and the ROK-US alliance are the two pillars of Korea's defense policy; building the self-reliant military force and developing a firm ROK-US alliance, enable us to achieve the future-oriented defense.

Above all, in order to keep pace with recent developments in the strategic environment including readjustment of the USFK, the ROK military has developed the ROK-US alliance in a future-oriented direction. In doing so, Korea and the United States have conducted joint studies and consultations on the issues such as the joint vision of the future ROK-US alliance, the relocation of the US forces in Korea, the command relationship, and development of combined combat capabilities.

In addition, the ROK military has sought to bolster its capabilities, not only to seize the initiative in deterring any existing threats from North Korea, but also to secure core military capabilities to meet with potential threats in the future. It will also build a solid foundation for the self-reliant defense by gradually developing its own technological ability for advanced weapon systems and strengthening its defense industrial base.

Furthermore, in order to shape security environments in favor of the nation's security, the MND will promote national interests and enhance the ROK's international prestige, while expanding military diplomacy efforts proactively so that military cooperation with other countries can contribute to the peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula.

C. Building an Advanced Defense Management System

The MND has taken measures for efficient defense management through continuous self-evaluation and defense reform by

addressing changing security environments and new security challenges. In particular, the MND has upgraded specialization and consistency of defense management within limited defense resources, conducting the defense reform on a large scale by selecting reform tasks on all fronts for a low-cost and high-efficiency management system.

The MND will enhance the competencies of MND civilian government officials and upgrade their expertise so that they can make and implement policy decisions effectively. Such an initiative is designed to enable the MND to effectively connect national policy with the military policy, to coordinate service interests harmoniously, and to enable the armed forces to concentrate on their combat missions.

Moreover, the MND promotes force structure reforms by considering that victory in modern warfare is determined not by number of troops but by advanced and modern weaponry and equipment. To do so, the ROK military will increase the composition of officers in the troops and plan to establish an elite military manpower system, while reducing the number of enlisted men.

▲ Education to enhance MND officials' professionalism

Innovating the defense management system will enhance the efficiency of defense management systems. To be specific, the MND will construct an ubiquitous defense informational environment through the development of the logistic areas and the realization of network-centric battlefield operation concepts. Such measures will meet with challenges stemming from the needs for enhanced transparency and accountability in the defense resource management field and the increasing operation and management costs of weapon systems due to their high-precision and diversification.

Furthermore, the MND will provide quality combat service support and enhance efficiency in the administration of combat support units. The MND will expand outsourcing in those areas in order to make standing armed forces concentrate on their combat

and other operational missions.

The MND continually pursues policies aimed at boosting morale and promoting the welfare of soldiers by improving barrack facilities and living environment, while upgrading the "quality of life" of military personnel by developing the military medical service system like those of advanced nations.

D. Establishment of the Image of a Trustworthy Military

Even a military equipped with the state-of-the-art weaponry and equipment cannot guarantee victory if it fails to earn the trust and support of the people. In order to establish an image of the armed forces that is trusted by the people, the ROK military is taking such measures as to improve the barrack culture, to realize, the "defense administration open to the public," and to promote the welfare of the public.

Reform for a new barrack culture intends to create conditions favorable for enlisted soldiers' self-development and personal career during their service. Furthermore, the MND will establish military conditions that help soldiers to actualize their democratic values on the one hand and to focus their military lives on the fulfillment of their duties by respecting their human rights during their service time.

The ROK military will achieve an "open defense administration" that guarantees public participation as well as openness and transparency through various institutional reforms. In this regard, it will enhance the fairness, transparency, and customer-oriented nature of the current conscription administration. It will actively disclose current defense issues and matters of public concern prior to receiving public requests for information disclosure. It will also seek to reflect the opinions of people from various walks of life by increasing the involvement of civilian experts in the defense policy formulation process.

The ROK military will strive to protect and promote safety and interests of the people. In other words, the military is setting up organizations and systems to provide timely support for managing national disasters and catastrophes and recovering from those

emergencies. To guarantee the people's property rights in relation to various military activities, measures have been devised to reduce the noise level at military airfields and firing ranges. At the same time, the ROK military is broadening the scope of environmental preservation and management by securing personnel dedicated to the management of military environmental facilities and cleaning up contaminated soil.

Furthermore, it will do its best to satisfy the people's rights to know and to resolve any inconvenience inflicted upon them and to settle various civil complaints.

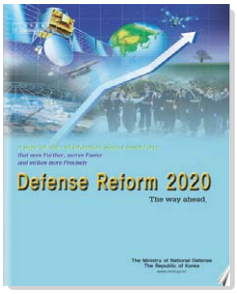
Section 3. Defense Reform to Build an Advanced, Elite, and Strong Force

Since the inauguration of the Participatory Government, the MND has continuously been pursuing the defense reform to build a cooperative self-reliant defense posture by restructuring the force structure and enhancing the efficiency of the defense management.

In order to actively cope with changing security environments and aspects of future warfare, the "Defense Reform 2020" intends to reorganize military structure, to pursue the state-of-art information and scientific force so that the ROK military can exert its integrated combat power to its fullest extent. On the other hand, the Defense Reform 2020 is organically connected to the development of the ROK-US alliance.

Moreover, the Defense Reform 2020 purposes to build an advanced, elite, and strong force for the 21st century by enhancing the efficiency of defense management and improving overall defense capabilities through upgrading the defense manpower operation system, acquisition and logistic support system, and defense informationization.

1. The Defense Reform 2020



The Participatory Government has continuously promoted the defense reform in order to better cope with future warfare, while reflecting changes in security environments. In January 2005, the MND began to analyze problems lying in the past defense reform efforts and identify unreasonable and inefficient factors inherent in the Korean defense system. Based on such analyses, the MND prepared the Defense Reform Plan 2020 while referring to the defense reform cases of major foreign countries.

The essence of the long-term vision of the Defense Reform 2020 is to realize the self-reliant and advanced defense which can assure peace and prosperity of the Korean Peninsula. The ROK will be able to achieve a self-reliant military force and establish an

advanced defense management system through the Defense Reform 2020 by completing technology-intensive military structure and force systems to be able to actively cope with future security situations and future warfare.

The MND drew up the defense reform draft through the Defense Reform Committee, organized on June 1, 2005, within the MND, and reported the defense reform basic plan to President Roh Moo-hyun on September 1, 2005. At the same time, the Defense Reform Plan was released to the general public. The goal of the defense reform was defined to "build an advanced, elite, and strong force and to work together with the people."

The four key points of the Defense Reform 2020 are as follows:

First, the ROK armed forces will build their military structure and force systems that best befit characteristics of modern warfare.

Second, the civilian workforce in the MND will be expanded, while the military will concentrate on the fulfillment of combat missions.

Third, the defense management system will be innovated to promote information and science for the military force in a highly efficient and low cost manner.

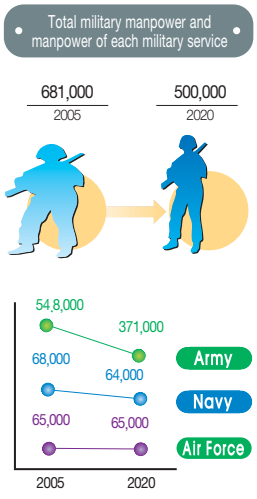
Fourth, the defense system will be transformed into a highly efficient one by improving the barrack culture and overall national defense.

2. Key Tasks for the Defense Reform

The MND will establish a comprehensive plan, taking the security environment and conditions into account. The reform will be gradually implemented in phases, with the goal of completion by the year 2020. The following contents are the key tasks for the Defense Reform 2020.

First of all, the ROK military will strengthen the advanced military capability, create a high quality elite force, and develop a force equipped with science and technology. Until 2020, the ROK military will reduce from 680,000 troops to 500,000 troops gradually.

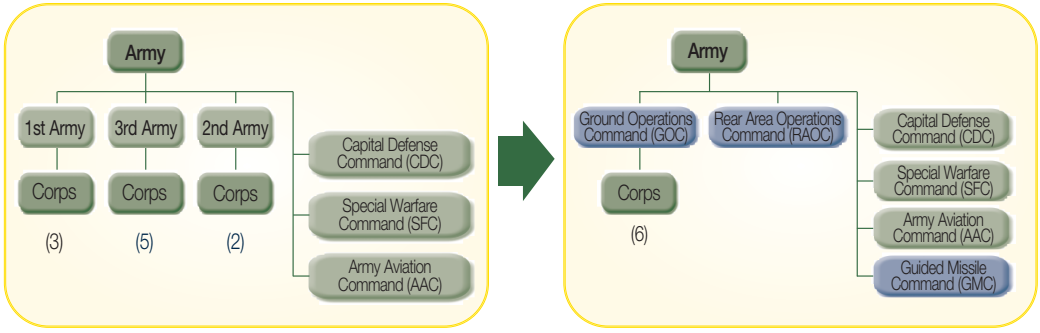
The JCS will be reorganized as the central organization capable



of defense planning and operational execution. Its functions and organizations will be strengthened so that the ROK military can exercise the integrated military capabilities of the army, navy, and air force.

The ROK Army will restructure it by reducing the numbers of army corps and divisions, as reinforcing the combat capability of each unit in twice to three times. The Army will also secure weapons and equipment with high combat efficiency and increase the unmanned aviation vehicles, next generation tanks, armored personnel carriers, firepower system, simplifying the command structure so that it can transform into a modernized organization. Changes in the army structure are shown in Figure 2-1.

〈Figure 2-1〉 Changes in the ROK Army Structure

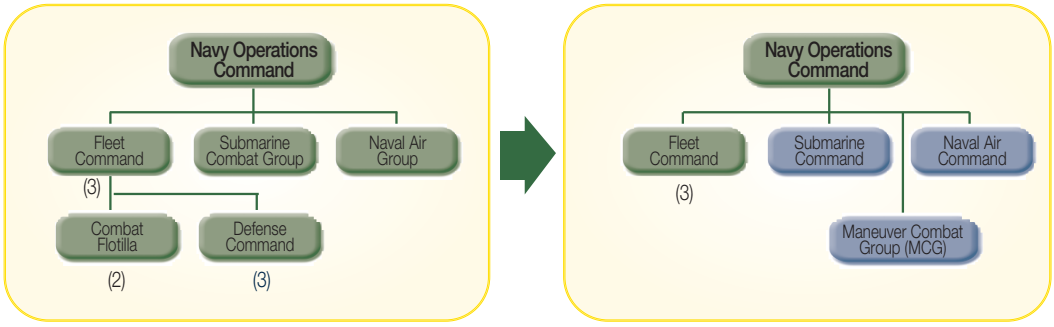


In particular, the ROK Army will integrate the FROKA (First ROK Army) and the TROKA (Third ROK Army) to create the Ground Operations Command (GOC), while changing the SROKA (Second ROK Army) into the Rear Area Operations Command (RAOC). Furthermore, the general outpost (GOP) guard systems which have been maintained for 50 years since the Korean War will be replaced by guard brigades equipped with advanced guard systems, which will, in turn, reduce the number of guards and reinforce the quality of the guard system.

The ROK Navy is building a structure suitable for three-dimensional operations on surface, underwater and in the air. It will reform its force structure from coastal defense to omni-directional defense structure strong enough to uphold our national interest including protecting the Sea Lines of Communications

(SLOC) and marine resources and ensure the safety of the nation's maritime activities. The unit structure will shift from the current structure of 3 Fleet Commands, 1 Submarine Combat Group, and 1 Naval Aviation Wing to 3 Fleet Commands (FC), 1 Submarine Command (SC), 1 Naval Aviation Command (NAC), and 1 Maneuver Combat Group (MCG). These changes are designed to develop the ROK Navy's maneuver unit structure so as to enhance operational capabilities suitable for future battlefields. The following Figure 2-2 indicates the changes in the ROK Navy structure.

〈 Figure 2-2〉 Changes in the ROK Navy Structure

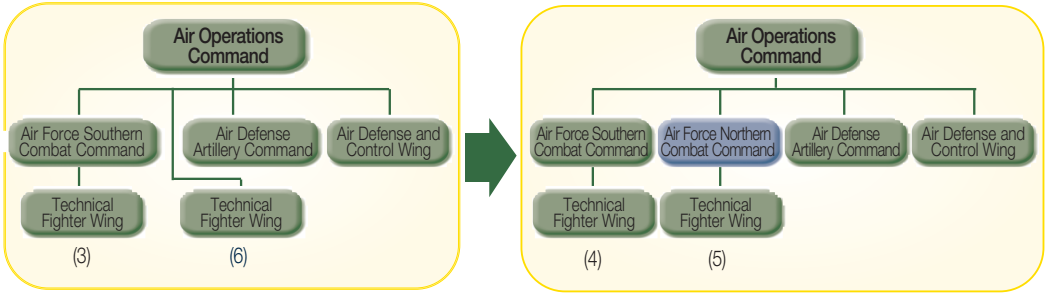


The Marine Corps will turn into a versatile structure of air-land maneuver units and strategic island defense that is capable of three-dimensional landing operations, rapid response operations, and ground maneuver operations.

The ROK Air Force will develop a structure suitable for air superiority and precision strike by constantly keeping a watchful eye over the enemy and maintaining a high-level combat readiness posture for immediate response, such as retaliatory strikes at peace time. The mission of the Air Force during war is to achieve air superiority and provide support for ground and naval operations, while securing the military operational capabilities throughout the Korean Peninsula.

The changes of the ROK Air Force structure are shown in the following Figure 2-3. In order to enhance air operational effectiveness, the Air Force Northern Combat Command (AFNCC) is established along with the Air Force Southern Combat Command (AFSCC), 9 Fighter Wings, Air Defense Artillery Command (ADAC), and Air Defense and Control Wing (ADCW).

〈 Figure 2-3〉 Changes in the ROK Air Force Structure



The reserve forces will be changed into a quality elite reserve force by 2020. Maintaining only the critical number of reserve forces relative to the size of standing armed forces enables the reserve forces to function as alternative forces to regular armed forces.

In its reform of the defense management system, the ROK Armed Forces will increase the ratio of officers and introduce a paid volunteer system in order to reinforce professionalism, so that the new military manpower system can correspond to a new force and manpower structure. The ROK Armed Forces will also introduce a new system to ensure more transparency and rationality of personnel management. In addition, in O&M transparency, professionalism, responsibility and efficiency will be enhanced by innovating the defense management in general.

In the mean time, a new barrack culture will be created so that parents can send their children to the military service without anxiety. To help enlisted soldiers regard their military service period as a period in their life for self-cultivation, the ROK Armed Forces will shape conditions for self-regulated barrack life, establish an e-learning system and modernize military installations.

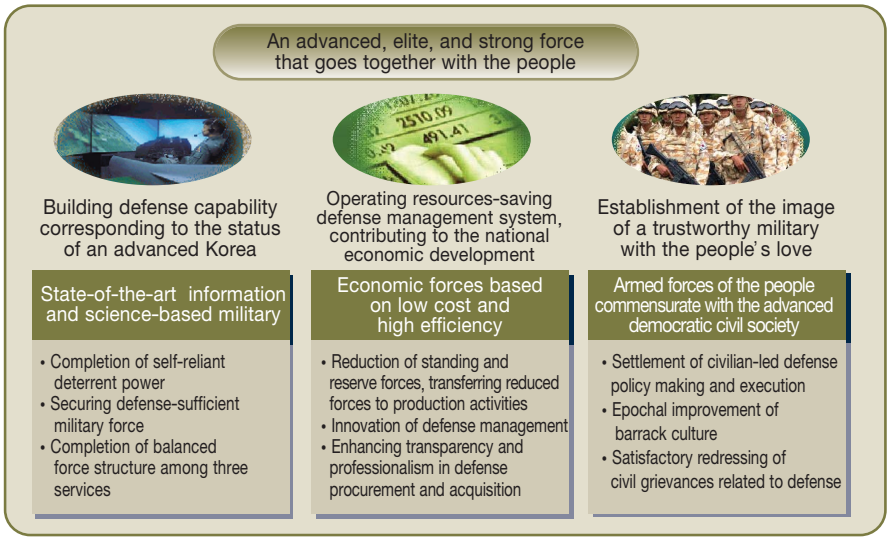
Particular items in the Defense Reform 2020 that require legislation will be introduced in separate bills and regulations and will be implemented consistently. The MND will periodically evaluate the state of its implementation and defense conditions, and will revise and supplement the basic plans of the defense reform, when it deems necessary, in order to address changes in security environments.

3. The Effect of the Defense Reform

The recent Defense Reform 2020 reflects the MND's serious efforts to meet nationwide demand for reform. The reform holds significance not only because it reflects the President (the Supreme Commander) Roh Moo-hyun's strong will to accomplish defense reform, but because military leaders together took the lead by accommodating the era's call upon the defense reform.

The features of the ROK Armed Forces in 2020 are shown in the following Figure 2-4.

〈Figure 2-4〉 The ROK Armed Forces in the Year 2020



First, the ROK Armed Forces will possess military capability commensurate with their advanced international stature by building the information and science-centered advanced military force. They will devote themselves to nurturing a military force that "sees further, moves faster and strikes more precisely" in order to actively cope with a rapidly changing modern warfare, being fully equipped with advanced surveillance, maneuver, and attack capabilities, and forming a balanced force structure among the three military services.

Second, the ROK Armed Forces will be converted into the

economic military, managed efficiently and reasonably through an innovative defense management system. By doing so, they will minimize waste factors and become resources-saving armed forces.

Third, by improving the military culture and military service environment to the level of advanced countries, the ROK Armed Forces will heighten public awareness through active public relations activities on defense policies and enhance public confidence in the military.

4. Budget for the Defense Reform

The total budget for the Defense Reform 2020 between 2006 and 2020 is assessed to amount to 621 trillion won (force improvement projects of 272 trillion won and O&M of 349 trillion won), including 67 trillion won slated only for the defense reform. The MND, the Ministry of Planning and Budget (MPB), and the Korea Institute for Defense Analyses (KIDA) together reached the same conclusion that such amount will be available for the defense reform, given the nation's economic growth and future government budget trends.

In sum, as Table 2-5 indicates, the average rate of increase in defense budget during the entire defense reform period is 6.2%, and is within the bounds of the average annual increase rate of 7.1% in the government budget as well as in the GDP.

〈Table 2-5〉 Major Indicators during the Defense Reform Period

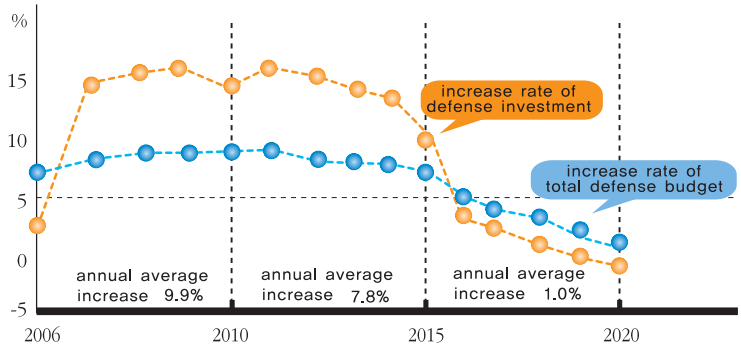
(unit: trillion won, %)

Unit	'06-'20	'06-'10	'11-'15	'16-'20
GDP (nominal growth rate %)	22,422 (7.1)	5,085 (7.4)	7,215 (7.2)	10,122 (6.7)
Government Budget (annual increase %)	3,701 (7.1)	835 (6.9)	1,185 (7.4)	1,681 (6.9)
Defense Budget (annual increase %)	621 (6.2)	139 (9.9)	216 (7.8)	266 (1.0)

※These defense reform budgets are estimates by research organizations as of 2006. Therefore, the MND will amend the chart by annually examining the budget subject to changes taking place in the defense reform.

As shown in Figure 2-6, annual increase rate of defense budget during the defense reform period indicates the tendency that while defense budget needs to be increased during the initial phases of the reform at a certain rate, the increase rate will decrease over time after the year 2015.

〈Figure 2-6〉 Increase Rate of Defense Budget during the Defense Reform Period



5. Legislative Efforts for the Defense Reform

Major elements of the Defense Reform 2020 were stipulated into a law in order to provide conditions for a consistent and continuous reform. When a draft was ready for the bill, the MND released to the public the objectives and basic guidelines that the defense reform should accomplish. The MND also decided to consistently promote the tasks that require legal binding power, including tasks to reflect the basic framework and spirit of the defense reform.

☞ Refer to Appendix 6 : "Key Contents of the National Defense Reform Act."

On December 2, 2005, a draft for the "Basic Laws of National Defense Reform" was presented to the National Assembly with the President's approval. On December 1, 2006, the "National Defense Reform Act" was passed in the National Assembly after going through legal procedures such as public hearings.

Part 1 includes general provisions (purpose of the law, basic tenets, definition of terms, basic duties of the government, etc).

Part 2 concerns the implementation of the defense reform and includes organization and operation of the Defense Reform

Committee.

Part 3 prescribes about advanced national defense management systems including the expansion of civilian-based national defense and the development of defense manpower operational structure.

Part 4 specifies reforms in force structure, balanced development of combat capabilities, and reorganization of the Joint Chiefs of Staff and the MND-related agencies.

Finally, Part 5 stipulates how to promote and develop a new barrack culture including modernization of the military service system, and military environment that will ensure human rights in the military and provide conditions for executing military missions.

6. Pursuit of the Defense Reform, 2005-2006

To push forward the Defense Reform 2020 in earnest, the MND formally drafted a "comprehensive plan for military structure reform" through the "Preparation Team for Military Structure Reform" established on December 1, 2005, along with taking measures for legislation. Through such efforts to build an independent defense planning capability and operational execution systems, the phase one reform of the ROK JCS was completed in January 2006.

The MND reviewed and confirmed priority items necessary for military structure reform, including unit operation concepts and deployment methods, the disintegration and wartime reorganization of mobilization divisions, the phased reorganization of the Rear Area Operations Command, and related force requirements.

On January 1, 2006, the MND also identified reform tasks by inaugurating the "Preparation Team for Defense Management Innovation." The MND expanded civilian-based defense manpower by establishing a "Detailed Plan to Implement the Defense Management Innovation," and enhanced the rationality of force operational systems by launching the Defense Acquisition and Procurement Agency (DAPA).

Furthermore, in order to seek efficiency of defense management, the MND is legislating the "Law on the Establishment and Operation of Military-run Organizations" to

facilitate outsourcing in the combat service support area. The MND is implementing measures to improve the barrack culture by shaping environments favorable for enlisted soldiers' self-development, modernizing military barracks, and enacting the "Basic Law of Military Service."

In order to accelerate the defense reform, the MND has been actively implementing the defense reform plans, through the "Defense Reform Implementation Team" (effective Octover 9, 2006), which was organized by combining the "Preparation Team for Military Structure Reorganization" and the "Preparation Team for Defense Management Innovation."

Chapter
3

Establishment of a Defense Posture to Safeguard Peace

Section 1. Maintenance of an Omnidirectional Military Readiness

Section 2. Establishment of Integrated Civil-Governmental-Military Defense Posture

Section 3. Combat Task-oriented Training and Exercises

Section 4. Training Reserve Forces as Key Combat Units

Section 1. Maintenance of an Omnidirectional Military Readiness

The ROK military has to maintain an omni-directional military readiness posture bracing for any possible armed provocation to support peaceful reunification and protect our country from external military threats and attacks from outside.

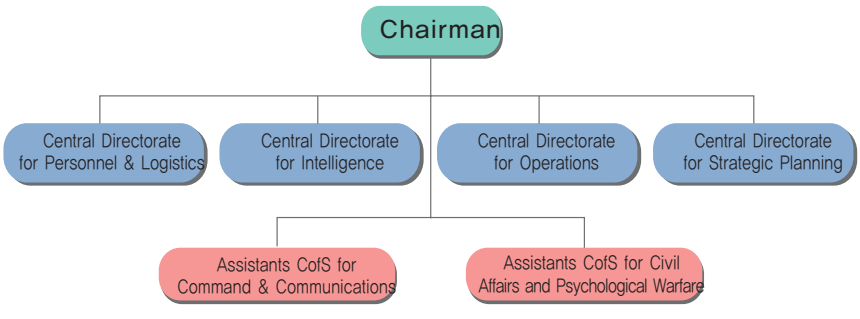
The ROK military is thoroughly maintaining and promoting military readiness to defend against North Korea's all-out attack or infiltration and provocation by making the ROK military advanced forces and by strengthening mental readiness of soldiers and enhancing their rapid response posture under the ROK-US combined defense system.

1. Military Organization and Force Capability

A. Strengthening the Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS)

The Joint Chiefs of Staff consists of four Central Directorates and two Assistant Chiefs of Staff and the organization of the JCS is shown in Figure 3-1. It conducts joint and combined operations by commanding joint military units established for joint operations, in addition to commanding and supervising operation units including operations command of each military service.

〈Figure 3-1〉 Organization Chart of the JCS



As a reform measure for the force structure, the JCS strengthened inter-operability among services and reorganized itself for independent defense planning and military operations.

As the first stage, the ROK military in 2006 reinforced its essential organiation centered on information and operations. As the second stage, it is scheduled to push for reforms in connection with the results of the ROK-US command relationship study (CRS), triggerd by the transfer of wartime operational control.

The primary challenge for defense reform is "reinforcing jointness" under the changing strategic environment and the nature of future warfare. To this end, the ROK military is establishing a joint combat development system by linking the concepts of jointness, its experiment, and combat promotion. It has established the concepts of operating joint forces to prepare for future warfare by publishing *The Concepts of Jointness*.

The ROK military is scheduled to develop its own joint combat development system through various efforts. These efforts include the development of each unit's combat method, the creation of force requirements using the concepts of a Net-Centric Warfare (NCW) by echelon, the revision of the joint military education system, the developmenp of a joint doctrine, the introduction of a joint specialty system, the operation of a committee on jointness, and the reorganization of the Joint Staff College into an exclusive institute for reinforcing jointness.

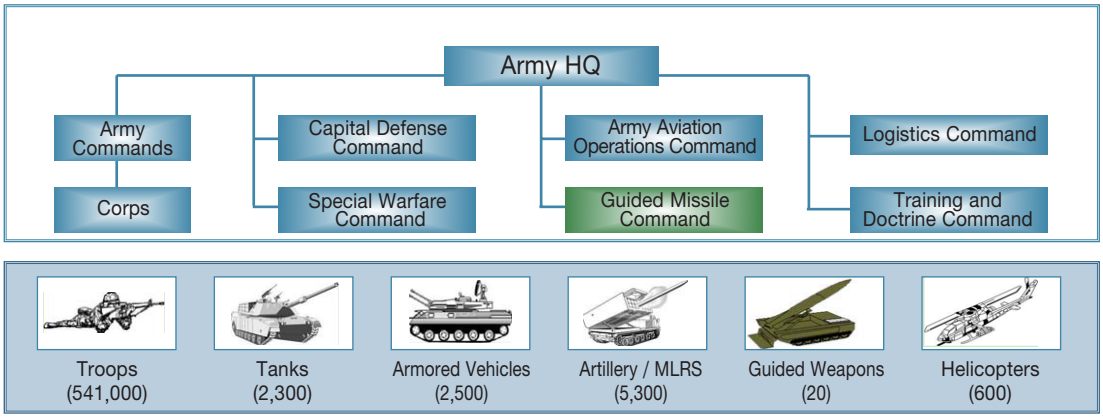
B. Force Capability of Individual Services

(1) Army

The ROK Army consists of the Army Headquarters, three Army Commands, the Capital Defense Command, the Special Warfare Command, the Army Aviation Operations Command, the Missile Command, and their support units. Major organization and force capability are as follows in Figure 3-2.

The First and Third Armies perform the mission of defending the region that spans from the Military Demarcation Line (MDL) to the Capital area. The mission of the Second Army is to defend the

〈Figure 3-2〉 Major Organization and Force Capability of the ROK Army



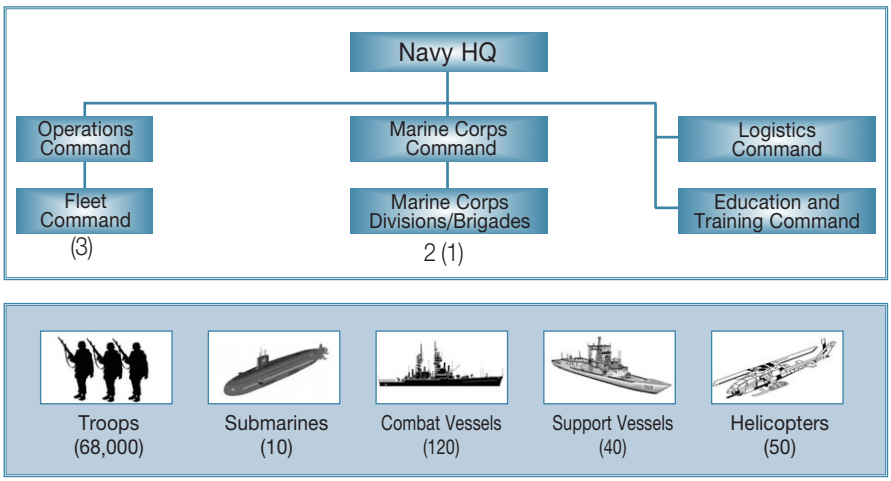
entire rear area not covered by the First and Third Armies. The Capital Defense Command carries out the mission of defending the Greater Seoul Metropolitan Area including providing support to maintain the functioning of the capital and protecting its major facilities. The tasks of the Special Warfare Command are to collect information, locate enemy targets and carry out other designated special missions. The Army Aviation Operations Command provides maneuvering forces with firepower, airlift and reconnaissance support by operating various types of helicopters. In September 2006, the ROK military established the Missile Command to enhance its precision strike capability.

The ROK Army will shift its current manpower-intensive force structure into a technology-intensive one by (1) improving its mobility, strike capability, survivability, and precision through the acquisition of state-of-the-art weapons systems rather than reducing the number of soldiers and units; and (2) making it a scientific, integral force so that it can effectively execute offensive maneuvering operations on the ground.

(2) Navy

The ROK Navy is comprised of the Navy Headquarters, Operations Command, Marine Corps Command, and support units. The status of its organization and major equipment is presented in Figure 3-3.

〈Figure 3-3〉 Major Organization and Force Capability of the ROK Navy



The Operations Command controls maritime operations across the board and utilizes various vessels and aircraft to conduct major naval component operations such as submarine warfare, anti-submarine warfare, mine operations, landing operations, salvage operations, and special operations. Each fleet command possesses combat vessels such as destroyers, frigates, corvettes and patrol crafts to defend its operational zone of responsibility. The Marine Corps Command performs the primary duty of conducting landing operation on the enemy's flank and rear areas. It also carries out such missions as forcing the dispersion of enemy forces on the coasts of the East and West Sea, and safeguarding the security of the west side of Seoul and northwestern islands.

The ROK Navy is planning to shift its structure to carry out three dimensional naval force operations including surface, underwater, and air by creating a submarine command and an aviation command, in addition to creating maneuvering fleets to enhance the capability to control near sea.

To that end, the ROK will equip its navy with a state-of-the-art defense system by building Aegis-class destroyers, next-generation

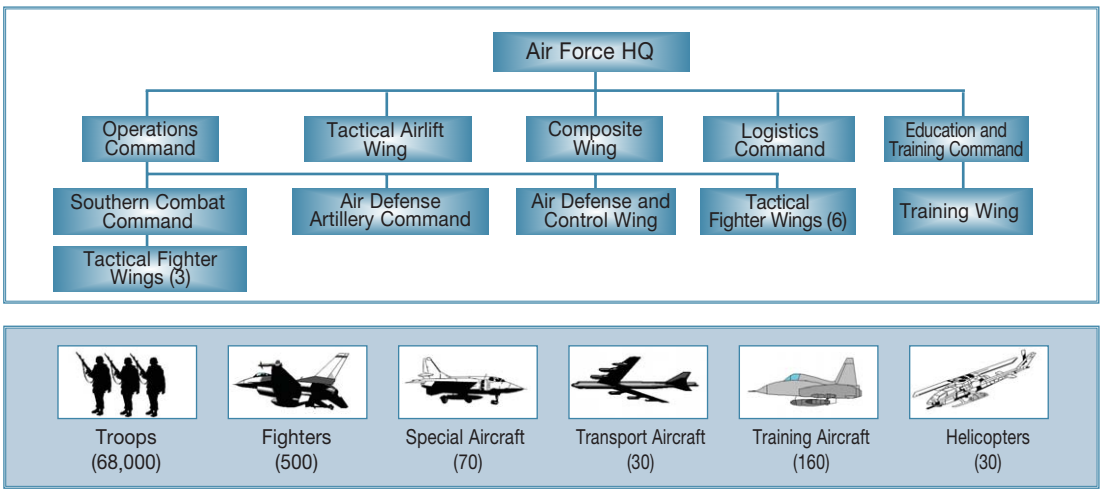
frigates, the Jangbogo-II submarine, the Jangbogo-III submarine, etc.

The Marine Corps Command will be equipped with brigade-level amphibious operation capabilities by the acquisition of unmanned reconnaissance aircraft, amphibious Multiple Launch Rocket Systems and next-generation amphibious APCs.

(3) Air Force

The ROK Air Force is composed of Headquarters, Operations Command, and support units and its organization and major equipment are presented in Figure 3-4.

〈Figure 3-4〉 Major Organization and Force Capability of the ROK Air Force



Air Campaign:
Air Campaign is a series of air operations to achieve a military goal in a given space and period.

The Operations Command conducrs air operations such as air control, strategic attack, air interdictions, close air support by mobilizing fighters, special aircraft and the control of the air campaign process.

The Southern Combat Command which belongs to the Operations Command conducts air operations and strategic measures over the Southern area of responsibility and the Air Defense Artillery Command executes multi-level air defense operations by using multi-altitude air defense weapons.

The ROK Air Force will turn its force structure into proper forms of acquiring air supremacy and precision strikes by

introducing a system of surveillance, high performance aircraft, airborne early warning and control, and precision guided weapons. In addition, the ROK Air Force plans to establish a Northern Combat Command to implement its mission for the Northern area of responsibility.

C. Employment of USFK and Augmentation Forces

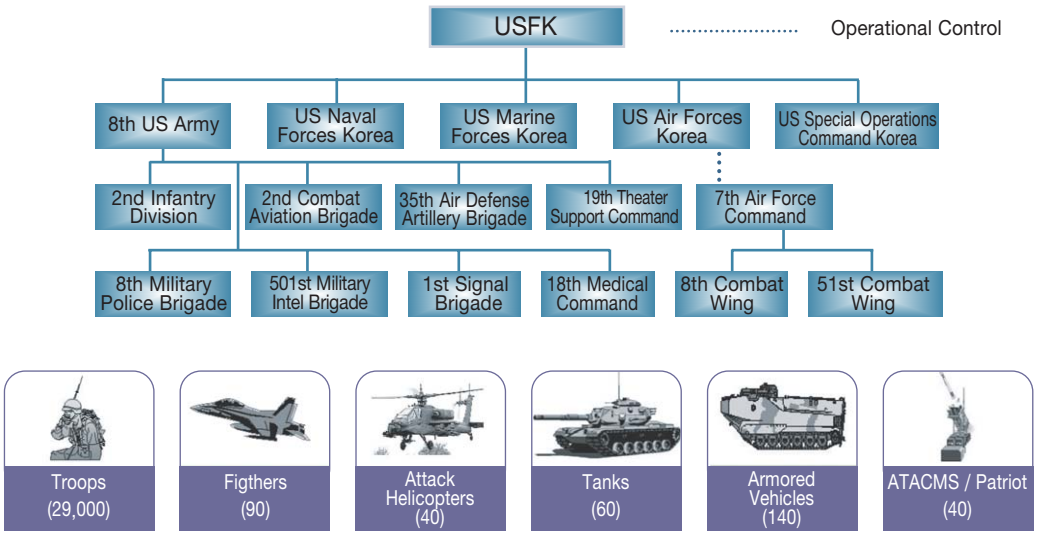
(1) Status of the United States Forces Korea

The United States Forces Korea (USFK), stationed in the ROK in accordance with the "ROK-US Mutual Defense Treaty," plays a pivotal role and function in deterring war on the Korean peninsula and contributes to peace and stability in the Northeast Asian region.

The Commander of the USFK also serves as the Commander of the UNC/CFC. Under the control of the Commander of the USFK are the 8th US Army, US Naval Forces Korea, US Air Forces Korea, US Marine Forces Korea, and the US Special Operations Command Korea. Figure 3-5 shows the organization and major combat capability of the USFK.

ATACMS:
Army Tactical missile System, Which refers to ground-to-ground missiles operated by the Army with the maximum range of 300km

〈Figure 3-5〉 Major Organization and Force Capability of the USFK



The USFK controls two divisions and two aviation brigades as a major combat deterrent capacity including Abraham tanks, Bradley armored vehicles, 155mm self-propelled howitzers, multiple rocket launch systems, AH-64 helicopters as well as a wide range of surface-to-air missiles such as the Patriot.

As part of the Global Defense Posture Review (GPR), the US and the ROK agreed to reduce the manpower of the USFK by 12,500 troops in three stages by 2008. In order to complement such reduction in manpower, the USFK has invested US $ 11 billion to enhance its force capabilities.

(2) Augmentation Forces

US augmentation forces, including the Army, Navy, Air Force and Marine Corps, are comprised of approximately 690,000 troops, 160 naval vessels and 2,000 aircraft. These forces will be deployed in the event of a contingency to defend the ROK.

Deployment of the augmentation forces in the event of a crisis on the Korean Peninsula will be based on the "Time-Phased Forces Deployment Data (TPFDD)," which primarily encompasses "Flexible Deterrence Options (FDOs)" and "Force Module Packages (FMPs)."

FDOs, consisting of approximately 130 deterrence options, refer to diplomatic, intelligence, economic, and military options to be implemented when war is imminent. FMPs are those measures that augment major combat and support units requiring the most urgent support in the early phases of war, should war deterrence efforts through FDOs fail. FMPs include such major components as rapid deployment aircraft and carrier battle groups.

TPFDD:
Time-Phased Forces Deployment Data, which refers to the list and specifications of the deployment of US augmentation units as requested by the Commander, Combined Forces Command to implement operational plans of the UNC/CFC

FDO:
Flexible Deterrence Option

FMP:
Force Module Package

▲ U.S. Aircraft Carrier Kitty Hawk

2. Military Readiness Posture

The ROK Armed Forces are maintaining a firm military readiness posture capable of swiftly responding to various types of threats including North Korea's military as well as non-military threats such as terrorism and

potential threats in the future. Especially in connection with North Korea's nuclear development, the ROK Armed Forces make it their basic policy to respond under the ROK-US alliance, and they are developing concrete plans of enhancing their independent response capabilities.

A. Maintenance of Early Warning and Establishment of Crisis Management Systems

The ROK military operates on an early warning and 24-hour aerial surveillance system by using the ROK-US combined crisis management and cooperation system and by monitoring the sea and airspace around the Korean Peninsula including North Korea.

Also, it is constructing a framework of information circulation on a real time basis in order to identify upcoming threat factors by analyzing the movements of North Korean forces and other threat elements.

Assuming various types of crisis situations in the Korean Peninsula, the ROK military has prepared a manual for responding to each crisis circumstance. The crisis management entities comprising the ROK Ministry of National Defense (MND) and Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) constantly pursue the alignment of their command post automation systems and the improvement of their functionality in order to ensure rapid discernment of relevant circumstances and the execution of effective measures by sharing information in an early stage. The ROK military has taken joint measures to crisis from the initial stage by establishing the ROK-US allied crisis management system. Since, it is necessary to integrate a variety of information, to decide speedily, and to take measures within a short period of time under crisis situations, the ROK military is developing the peacetime ROK-US consultation body and supplementing the crisis management system through regular ROK-US combined crisis management exercises.

In addition, they have constantly improved their crisis management capabilities through regular exercises and special training programs, based on the development of concrete procedures to deal with each type of conceivable crisis.

Especially, the dramatic improvement of functionality with the rapid development of IT skills has enhanced the capability of the ROK-US command post automation system.

B. Readiness Posture against Infiltrations and Local Provocations

GP: Guard Post

In spite of increased exchanges between the two Koreas, North Korea has repeated its provocations into the South, as evidenced by infiltration of the Northern Limit Line (NLL), shootings on a South Korean GP, multiple violation of the borderline, and the West Sea skirmish in 2002.

▲ Patrol activities around five major Northwestern islands and Dok-do island

Under such circumstances, the ROK Armed Forces have maintained a 24-hour surveillance and monitoring posture on all North Korean military movements and potential infiltrators. At the same time, they have conducted vigilant patrol activities by using naval vessels, submarines and aircraft on the seas under their jurisdiction including the five major Northwestern Islands, Mara-do, Ulleung-do and Dok-do Islands.

In particular, to be fully prepared against the possibility of any intentional armed provocation in the northwestern sea, the ROK military has been reinforcing the state of its combat readiness by providing detailed rules of engagement.

▲ Scene of coast guarding mission

On the other hand, the ROK military has promoted the use of communication systems between North and South Korean naval vessels according to the agreement of the North-South general-level talks in 2004, in order to prevent accidental military clashes.

Moreover, the ROK military has drastically enhanced the "quality" of guarding posture with scientific surveillance equipment replacing the existing manpower-centered guarding system in the DMZ and other vulnerable areas. The ROK military is keeping a tight defense posture on a real time basis bracing for various incidents which can happen in the inter-Korean administrative zone along the inter-Korean roads and railways.

▲ Scene of F- 16's patrolling mission over Dok-do

C. Readiness Posture Against an All-out War

The ROK-US allied forces maintain a combat readiness posture on a real time basis against North Korea's military provocations and put an all-out effort to deter any such provocation. Moreover, they are ready to deter the enemy's surprise attacks with an early warning system which can cover the Korean Peninsula and provide swift response measures.

The ROK military has already established readiness posture to dominate the battlefield, should the North launch a war, by

denying the enemy's rapid attack, and launching precision strikes against North Korea's long-range missiles and artillery. By doing so, the ROK military can secure the safety of the metropolitan area.

The ROK military has reinforced its capability to fight by conducting periodical joint and combined military exercises simulating a real war. Moreover, the ROK military is promoting new concepts such as NCW (Network Centric Warfare), IO (Information Operations), EBO (Effects-Based Operations) by formulating a military doctrine to mobilize the Army, Navy, Air forces and Marine Corps jointly and simultaneously, not to mention enhancing interoperability and capability to perform ROK-US combined operations.

At the same time, the ROK military is gradually setting up an advanced C4ISR-PGM system, to see first, decide first, and strike first.

EBO:
Effects Based Operations

IO (Information Operations):
an operation to attack or influence the enemy's information system or information itself while protecting our information and information system by all means with a view to accomplish information superiority

NCW:
Network Centric Warfare

C4ISR:
Command, Control, Communications, Computers, Intelligence, Surveillance and Reconnaissance

PGM:
Precision Guided Munitions

D. Readiness Posture Against Terrorist Attacks

In the aftermath of the 2005 Busan APEC Summit, the ROK military prepared a working-level manual to help provide active support in times of terrorist attacks on military facilities and civilians. It was part of their continued effort to adjust their exsisting counter-terror plans to better fit the changing situations for counter-terror operations. Also, they equipped counter-terror units with state-of-the-art gears for more effective terror-suppression capabilities, while pushing ahead with advanced, scientific training ranges and focusing on specialty education and inspection for such units as counter-terror special forces, early response units, explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) units, and decontamination units.

▲ Counter terror training for APEC in Busan

To prepare for any bio-chemical terror attack, the ROK NBC Defense Command and Chemical Support Troops closely cooperate with anti-terror agencies like the National Intelligence Service, the National Police Agency, and the National Emergency Management Agency. They have established a united cooperation system with swift response posture to counter terror incidents.

3. Maintenance of a Rapid Response Posture

The ROK military maintains a rapid response posture and use personnel and resources that are necessary for staging a war.

A. Manpower Mobilization

Manpower mobilization refers to, in the event of a war or a contingency or a quasi-national emergency, recruiting troops, securing the support personnel necessary for military operations, and recruiting additional personnel to keep the functions of the government in order and perform the missions of key industrial firms designated for wartime mobilization. Manpower mobilization is divided into troop mobilization, wartime labor service mobilization, and technician mobilization.

Designated Agency:
An industrial company that is informed by the government to undertake a mission as part of the wartime mobilization plan

Troop mobilization refers to expanding (augmenting or activating) military units and mobilizing troops to make up for the lives lost in times of a war, contingency, or mobilization, and to use them as combat troops. A critical element accounting for most of manpower mobilization, *troop mobilization* aims at designating and managing elite reservists to secure efficiency of wartime mobilization of forces, at zoning and controlling the areas for reservists to resport for a timely mobilization, and at continuously improving mobilization and convoy systems.

Wartime labor service mobilization refers mobilizing people for manual work including repairing damages and transporting supplies and ammunitions to assist military operations. For a more efficient implementation of missions for these laborers, the government readjusted the candidates for wartime labor service mobilization from those who belong to the "People's Secondary Military Service" to those reservists who belong to civil defense corps.

Technician mobilization involves mobilizing people with certain technical qualifications for equipment operation or maintenance, the government continues to select technicians skilled in current and new technologies.

B. Materiel Mobilization

Mobilization for Use: a certain period of time to be restored to the original owner upon termination of mobilization; applicable to equipment mobilization.

Management on Control: Controlling the steps of production, repair, processing and distribution to attain the purposes of mobilization, with autonomy of relevant companies guaranteed in non-controlled areas; applicable to company mobilization, etc.

The objective of materiel mobilization is to back up military operations and ensure sustainability by mobilizing such resources as commodities, equipment, facilities and entities held by the civilian sector and government at the right time and place.

Industrial mobilization refers to mobilization of items required by the military in the form of food, clothing, oil, fortification materials, etc., from production and maintenance companies, public relations media, hospitals and so forth.

Transportation mobilization means "mobilization for use" or "management on control" of such transport equipment as automobiles, ships and airplanes as well as maintenance, transport and loading/unloading service providers which the ROK military needs in the event of a contingency. For timely mobilization, the ROK military has adopted improved mobilization methods including mobilization of substitute vehicles to cover partial shortage of vehicles and expansion of the scope of potential substitute vehicles by type in areas with insufficient resources.

Construction mobilization refers to "mobilization for use" or "management on control" of buildings, land, construction machinery, construction equipment maintenance service providers and construction companies that are required by the ROK military. In order to shorten the time spent for mobilization, the military has improved the current mobilization system, authorizing replacement of any deficient equipment in a city or province with similar equipment.

Communication mobilization means "mobilization for use" or "management on control" of ordinary (domestic and international) communication/satellite communication lines and IT service providers. It aims at ensuring successful military operations by providing swift support to military communication networks during war.

4. Strengthening Soldiers' Spiritual Power

The ROK military has to reinforce the spiritual power of soldiers to ensure victory and to establish a firm perspective on our country

and national security for the accomplishment of its missions. The reinforcement of the spiritual power of the soldiers is very important in enhancing invisible combat capability. And it is essential for promoting military capability as it is for developing combat techniques.

Accordingly, the MND is placing a high priority on cultivating soldiers' spiritual power to "establish a firm defense posture" by training elite soldiers who can know and practice exactly what to protect (the view on the nation), who is our enemy (the view on security), and how to protect (soldier spirit).

A. Focuses and Meanings

The ROK military has to protect its territory and sovereignty, the ideology of liberal democracy and system, the lives of people and property, and our traditional culture and history. To that end, setting up a right perspective of the nation is essential.

▲ Fostering the military spirit through physical training

It is clear from whom we have to defend. We have to protect our country from those who threaten, assist or support the threateners of our national interest which includes our national existence, security, and national sovereignty, etc. To consolidate the attitude involves establishing a sound perspective on national security.

A soldier is one who can willingly give up his life for his country when it is in danger. The soldier's spirit is a crucial factor that determines a win or loss in war, and a standard as well as an index of the soldier's thoughts and actions.

B. How to Realize

Spiritual cultivation for soldiers is implemented at military schools and military units. Officers in charge have to be endowed with the ability to teach spiritual education in the classroom and they have to educate newly arrived soldiers by putting an emphasis on "soldier making" so they can easily adapt to the barrack life by understanding the military's mission and its peculiarity.

Spiritual education at units is implemented in regular curricula and in the barrack life so that soldiers who are assigned to their units can practice and internalize the "soldier values" after finishing their military school education and recruit training.

Specifically, the MND is enhancing the quality of spiritual education by applying various spiritual education methods, such as inviting civilian experts, lecturing tours of the Korea National Defense University's spiritual education support unit, etc.

The MND is providing directions to the soldiers' spiritual education to proceed with unity and consistency and it gives contents adequate to adapting to changes in environment when necessary.

Also, the MND not only provides periodicals for the soldier's emotional stability and the instructor's reference books but it also distributes basic textbooks on spiritual education in order to enhance educational effectiveness.

The MND is developing various spiritual education programs and textbooks to provide actual practice and internalization for soldiers in consideration of the changed environment and their personality.

▲ A scene of recording spiritual education program on the KFN TV

And it also has constructed a simultaneous education system on satellite TV for military use in order to enhance the quality and system of cyber spiritual education to meet the needs of the information and science era.

Section 2. Establishment of an Integrated Civil-Governmental-Military Defense Posture

As shown by the 1/21 incident in 1968, the Gangneng submarine infiltration attempt in 1996, the Yeonpyeong Sea Battle in 1999, repeated violations of the Northern Limit Line (NLL) and shootings against South Korean guard posts, North Korea has constantly perpetrated acts of provocation against South Korea. Meanwhile, North Korea possesses 120,000-men special forces in the name of the "military-first policy"; it has military capabilities to invade into South Korea at any time.

Besides the fear of military threats, non-military threats such as terror and natural disasters are increasing in number. Therefore, it is necessary to establish an integrated defense posture in which all national powers available are integrated.

1. Integrated Defense System

The integrated Defense Headquarters is headed by the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. Its main missions are to formulate and coordinate policies for integrated defense, to ascertain and supervise the integrated defense posture, to conduct general analyses of the situations of integrated defense operations and present counter-measures, to provide directions for operations and training for integrated defense, and to coordinate and control their execution.

The Central Integrated Defense Committee is the top decision-making organization in connection with integrated defense, which belongs to the Office of the Prime Minister. It deliberates and votes on national integrated defense policy, directions for operations and training for integrated defense, and the announcement of an integrated defense situation.

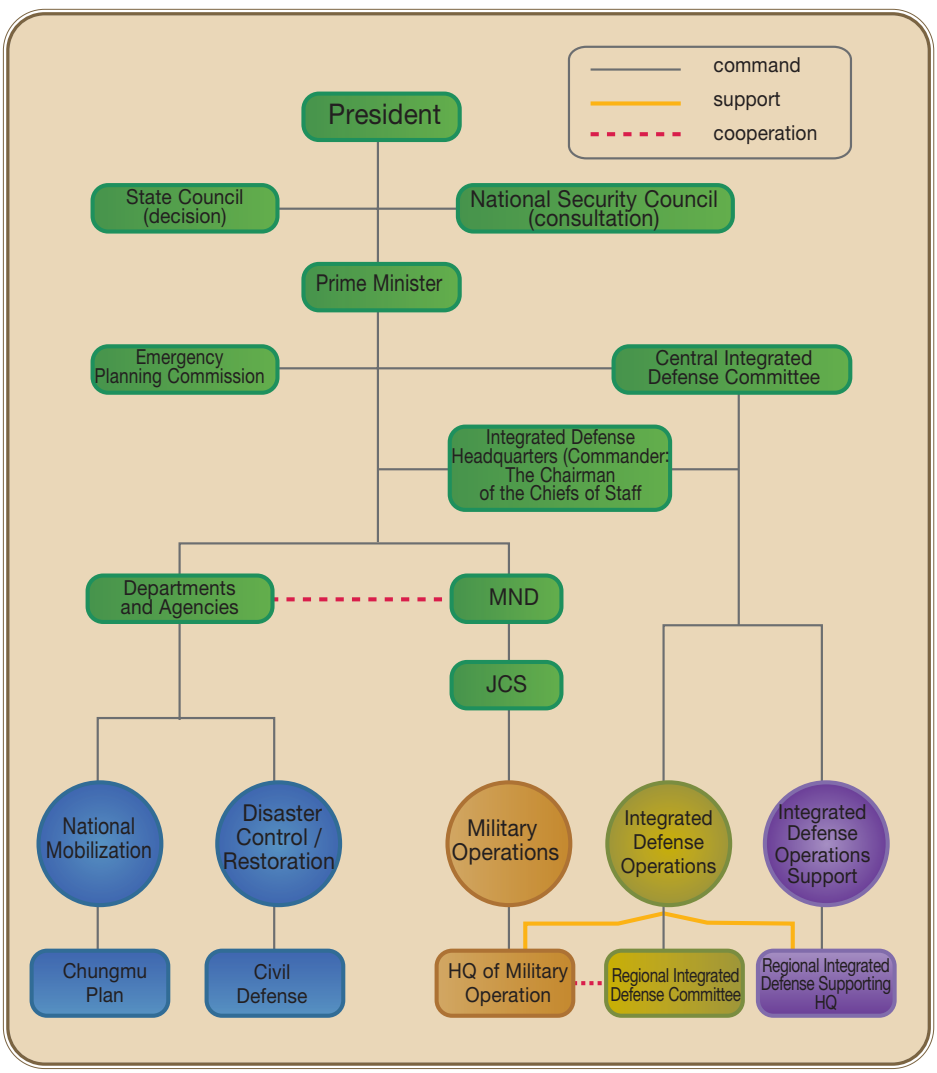
▲Operation of general briefing room of the Integrated Defense

The Regional Integrated Defense

Committee which belongs to the mayor of the metro-politan city, provincial governor and mayor, county and ward chief, deliberates and votes on integrated defense counter-measures, the announcement of integrated defense situations (Orange and Yellow), and integrated defense operations and supporting measures for its training.

Moreover, the Integrated Defense Supporting Headquarters, which belongs to the provincial governor and mayor of metropolitan city, establishes and executes a support plans for

〈Figure 3-6〉 Integrated Defense System



training integrated defense operations. Furthermore, it runs an integrated defense situation room, nurtures and supports the national defense elements, and monitors residential reporting systems in remote areas.

2. Integrated Defense Operation Posture

The Integrated Defense System by chiefs of local governments was constructed for setting up a regional security posture because of the increased necessity for its role and function over regional security issues since the local government system was introduced in 1995.

In the case of the enemy's infiltration or provocation, the provincial governors or city mayors as the chiefs of the Regional Integrated Defense Committee, declare an integrated defense incident, and support any military operation by establishing integrated defense support headquarters, implementing integrated defense operations by combining all national defense elements by nominating the corresponding region's director of local police agency or local military commander as a commander.

The MND is putting its priority on setting up and upgrading the system to respond immediately and create a synergy effect by integrating its functionality and each military unit's effort under the local government chief's direction and cooperation which is stipulated by integrated defense regulations so as to construct a perfect regional integrated defense posture in the civil, governmental and military defense circles.

Moreover, in the case of the enemy's infiltration, provocation, disaster, or accident, the MND is putting its effort to effectly run a situation room for integrated defense by building an integrated communication system, combining all the operational factors of the civil, governmental and military for effective command and control.

The Integrated Defense General Situation Room is equipped with the LAN and CCTV among functional departments in the HQ as well as the WAN and two-way broadcasting systems in the provincial or metropolitan situation rooms to share information suitable to the IT generation.

LAN:
Local Area Network

WAN:
Wide Area Network

▲ Instructing visit for protection over the important national facility

The MND is enforcing a system which enables integrated measures centering around the chiefs of local governments by supporting an on-line system on a real time basis.

To protect critical national facilities, the MND is strengthening watch and surveillance equipment as well as implementing a self-protection plan for each facility. The ROK military and police are enforcing related exercises and developing integrated protecting plans over the whole area of critical national facilities.

Especially in 2006, it complemented concrete means to control and evaluate the exercises, the substance and time of the drill in order to enhance the contents and qualities of the practice by putting emphasis on the improvement of integrated defense training.

3. Homeland Defense Operation Posture

Homeland defense operations are integrated civilian-government-military operations conducted by mobilizing the Reserve Forces with a view to eliminating enemy infiltrations in certain areas at the earliest possible time and to guard critical facilities and logistical supply lines, both in times of peace and war.

The Reserve Forces pursue a step-by-step modernization of combat equipment and complementation of homeland defense supplies to enhance homeland defense operation capabilities in peace and war times. In addition, the "Regulations on Nurturing and Supporting of the Homeland Reserve Forces" was enacted and enforced to lay out an institutional basis that ensures appropriate support for homeland defense operations. The Rules provide for the responsibilities and details of support by each entity fostering the Reserve Forces, formulation of systematic nurturing plans and the procedures of handling relevant affairs.

▲ Reservists participating in counter-infiltration operations

Section 3. Combat Task-oriented Training and Exercises

In an effort to bolster its deterrence capabilities as well as its readiness posture for war on the Korean Peninsula, the ROK military conducts various joint/combined training and exercises including the Ulchi Focus Lens (UFL) Exercise, the Reception, Staging, Onward Movement and Integration (RSOI) Exercise, the Foal Eagle (FE) Exercise, the Taegeuk Exercise, the Hoguk Exercise, and Corps-level FTX. Such diverse training programs are designed to enhance combat capabilities. Moreover, the ROK military is enforcing military exercises and training in order to better prepare for a nuclear situation with North Korea.

1. Combined/Joint Training and Exercises

A. The Ulchi Focus Lens (UFL) Exercise

UFL: Ulchi Focus Lens

The Ulchi Focus Lens Exercise is a comprehensive command post exercise (CPX) conducted in August every year by the government and military for the defense of the ROK. A combination of the "Ulchi Exercise" for the purpose of government-level military support and the "Focus Lens Exercise," the UFL is designed to ensure proficiency in executing military aspects of the operational plans.

Exercise: The exercise refers to executing training of the operation plan, and it is supposed to be practiced by applying combat support and the doctrine of combat duty procedure just like a real combat situation at its maximum.

During the UFL, government-level drills designed to enhance not only administrative agencies, but also administrative organizations above the city-county-ward level, the ROK military, Combined Forces Command, USFK, and the US augmentation forces participate in the UFL and enhance combat capabilities through government-military exercises and the ROK-US combined

operations procedural training.

B. Reception, Staging, Onward Movement and Integration (RSOI) / Foal Eagle (FE) Exercise

The RSOI Exercise is a command post exercise conducted to build competence in the processes of reception, movement to a forward area, and integration of US augmentation forces that would be additionally deployed in the Korean Peninsula during war. Also included in the exercise are such procedures as wartime support, mutual logistics support, mobilization and combat power restoration on the part of the ROK Armed Forces providing support for the US augmentation forces. The RSOI Exercise is carried out every March with participation of the MND, JCS, each service's HQ, above the operations command level, the USFK command, the US augmentation forces to the Korean Peninsula.

The Foal Eagle Exercise is an ROK-US combined/joint field training exercise of troop mobilization training designed to enhance the capabilities of combined special operations and rear-area operations. Since 2002, it has been conducted in March in alignment with the RSOI Exercise.

Training:
It refers to the organizational process which enable to learn action skill and knowledge so as to executive military mission efficiently.

Allied Training:
it refers to the training which enables people to executed by joined action of the two or more than two countries in order to implement a single mission.

RSOI:
Reception, Staging, Onward Movement, and Integration

FE:
Foal Eagle

▲ An RSOI Exercise

▲ Combined air assault training

▲ Combined special operation training

C. The Taegeuk Exercise

The Taegeuk Exercise is a command post exercise to brace for possible war by promoting the JCS's capability of independent defense planning and the executing of military operations in order to identify requirements for system development and combat capability through war gaming.

The exercise was initiated to form a working-level exercise in 1995 at the request of the JCS to enhance its independent capability in the wake of the transfer of peacetime operational control in 1994. And since 1996, it has been developed as the JCS's general command post exercise by expanding its participation to operations command and naming it as the "Aprok River Exercise."

It has been developed as the ROK military's independent military drill by changing its name to the "Taegeuk Exercise" in 2004. It is especially developing the exercise by applying the "Taegeuk JOS Model" which was developed by the JCS in 2005.

JOS:
Joint Operations Simulation

The JCS is promoting joint military operations, counterfire operations, deep operations, effects-based operations, and the system of stabilization operations by enhancing jointness and combat-oriented thinking as well as mastering wartime mission and procedure of functional performance.

▲ Crossing river operation utilizing a floating bridge

D. The Hoguk Exercise

Conducted annually under the supervision of the ROK JCS since Nov. 1996, the Hoguk Exercise is an independent large-scale field maneuver exercise aimed at improving ability to master large-scale units procedure for operational plans as well as enhancing ability to conduct joint operations and integrated war fighting capability. The exercise is making it possible to train against a possible all-out war along the coastal and inland axes of movement.

Through the Hoguk Exercise, the ROK Armed Forces not only develop the concept of carrying out

joint operational plans of the commander and making use of integrated fire power or preparing for the posture of the counter-fire power but also check preparation plans for the changing situation of military structure and operational environment and verifying the validity of operational doctrines and various new equipment. By doing so, the MND is developing an operational level concept of the ROK military's combined operations.

E. The Hwarang Exercise

All civilian, governmental, and military operational components take part in the Hwarang Exercise that is conducted under the supervision of the Integrated Defense Headquarters. It is an expanded and upgraded form of the comprehensive training against infiltration into the Greater Seoul Metropolitan Area carried out from 1977 to 1981 under the control of the Third Army Command in order to increase its integrated defense capabilities in remote areas of the peninsula.

▲Decontamination training on the road

The Exercise is conducted in five regions. However, in odd years, it is conducted in three regions consisting of Seoul, Incheon and Gyeonggi, and Busan, Ulsan, Gyeongnam Province, Daegu and Gyeongbuk Province. In the even years, it is conducted in two regions consisting of Daejeon, Chungcheong, Gwangju, Jeolla, Jeju and Gangwon.

The Hwarang Excercise is conducted focusing on three things: to enhance wartime/peacetime operational plan execution capabilities, to enhance security awareness of the residents, and to establish the civil-govermental-military integrated defense posture.

F. Corps-Level FTX

The Field Training Exercise is an annual large-scale field mobilization exercise which is controlled by the JCS and it has been carried out for the enhancement of the corps-level army

units' integrated combat capability since 1995.

If the MND gives the direction of the training concept and guidelines to the operations command in good weather conditions, it controls the training and organization of the participating military units.

Combined Battle Judgement Model: It refers to the model which applies to Hoguk exercise with Corps' level FTX developed by the JCS itself in 1997 so as to implement a fair and speedy combat judgement according to the scientific method

The units in this exercise consist of the Army, Air Force and Marine Corps and the Exercise is supposed to upgrade the capability of the joint or combined military operations through a two-way free maneuver drill.

▲Operation of ATCIS

It has been made possible to evaluate the exercise fairly and speedily by applying the joint combat model which was indigenously developed in 1998. Moreover, it guides the training to enhance jointness, unity and simultaneity and focuses on mastering the combat executing procedure and combat tactics corresponding to each military unit's echelon.

Moreover, from the 2006 FTX, the MND has set up a state-of-the-art digital combat system, ATCIS, at each army corps level and applied it to each exercise for the first time following the drastic advances in information and scientific technologies.

ATCIS: Army Tactical Command Information System

Accordingly, the MND has set up the basis for applying a landmark system of exercise and it is planning to expand the system step by step in the future to maximize the combat capability by sharing the information on a real time basis between higher and lower rank military units.

2. Major Training of Individual Services

A. Army

Under the motto of "training as if fighting a war, and fighting a war just as trained," the Army conducts simulated war unit training centered on combat missions in order to maintain complete operational capabilities in preparation against possible infiltration and local provocation in peacetime and to win all ground campaigns in wartime.

For scientific development of unit training, the Army has set up

various training programs including combat command training, advanced combat training, and simulation training. Based on such efforts, the Army is drastically improving the practical effects of its education and training by allowing officers and soldiers to indirectly experience battle field situations.

The Battle Command Training Program (BCTP) nurtures the combat command capabilities of commanders and staff at the levels of corps, divisions, regiments and battalions, based on the application of the independently developed "Changjo 24 Model" and "Hwarang 21 Model."

BCTP:
Battle Command Training Program

The BCTP emphasizes mastering unit command procedures, strengthening the operational capabilities of integrated combat force, and assessing battle field experiences and regulations related to field operations.

Advanced combat training is a two-way free maneuver exercise utilizing "opposing forces." Based on the use of actual armed forces and equipment at the Korean Army Advanced Combat Training Center, it employs scientific training methods.

▲ Training using MILES (Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System)

Battalion-level training is currently being conducted at Inje and Hongcheon. However, regiment-level training and mobile equipment exercise will be carried out in the future.

Virtual Simulation refers to training which is able to fire, control, and simulate tactically in the virtual combat situation by developing virtual equipment of major combat to overcome limits of actual training.

B. Navy

The ROK Navy conducts simulated war unit training in concert with the respective battlefield environment in the East, West and South Seas to maintain flawless combat posture. Major exercises by the Navy include fleet/combat flotilla maritime maneuver exercises, combined exercises, component exercises, and Naval Academy midshipmen's cruise training.

▲ Maritime maneuver exercise

Maritime maneuver exercise is the training that entails offensive maneuvers designed to neutralize the enemy's naval force as soon as possible and secure control of the sea in the event of a contingency. Three-dimensional exercises involving the newest surface combatants, submarines, maritime aircraft and maritime operation helicopters are conducted more than 10 times a year on average.

Combined exercise participated by the ROK Navy is broken down into the ROK-US combined exercise to bolster combined defense capabilities and multinational combined exercise to promote military cooperation with foreign countries.

The ROK-US combined exercise ranges from counter special operation force exercise, anti-submarine maritime search, submarine, mine warfare, rescue, landing, and special warfare operations.

In addition, the ROK-Japan and ROK-Russia combined search & rescue operations are carried out. Moreover, the ROK Navy takes part in the RIMPAC (Rim of the Pacific) exercise, a multinational combined training exercise. It is a good chance for the ROK Navy to strengthen its combined military capability by exchanges and cooperation with 10 countries including the US, Japan, Russia, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, France and Britain.

RIMPAC:
Rim of the Pacific Exercise

Component exercise is implemented annually for strengthening combat capability for various missions specific to the Navy including anti-submarine warfare, mine warfare, amphibious warfare, rescue and search, special warfare and submarine exercises.

Implemented all around world, the Naval Academy midshipmen's cruise training spans 100 to 150 days each year. Its purpose is to enhance the midshipmen's job performance capabilities as prospective officers and raise the ROK's international stature through goodwill visits to friendly nations.

▲ F-15K's flight in formation

C. Air Force

Air Force training is generally classified as defensive counter-air training, offensive counter-air training and air interdiction training, close air

support to the Army and Navy, etc.

Defensive counter-air training aims to block the enemy's infiltration into the nation's airspace. The training utilizes simulated enemy aircraft which employs enemy infiltration tactics, in order to detect, identify, intercept and destroy, from a long distance, any enemy aircraft intruding by air, with the participation of interceptors and air defense artillery units.

Offensive counter-air training aims to win air supremacy over the enemy's area by using air power.

Air interdiction training is designed to restrain the enemy's combat capability, supply, and mobility by destroying or delaying enemy's potential military capability before its effective use against our Army and Navy.

The training includes the ROK Air Forces's independent or Combined Large Force Exercise (CLFE) and ground-to-ground deep strike training against tactical targets. To enhance the ability to respond to critical targets on a real time basis, the Air Force conducts emergency air interdiction training.

For the purpose of supporting ground and naval forces, close air support training is carried out through the use of fighters, night-vision goggles, IR pointer that enables all-weather precision attacks. Daytime/nighttime close air support and anti-ship attack training is conducted against simulated targets on the ground and in the sea. In addition, joint actual bombing, nighttime bombing and precision-guided weapons trainings are implemented to enhance practical attack capabilities.

NVG:
Night Vision Goggle

IR Pointer:
Infra-Red Pointer

The ROK military is executing counter-fire exercises through its HQ to respond to North Korea's 170mm, 240mm, multiple rocket launchers and it is periodically practicing counter-infiltration of North Korea's special forces by using landing craft.

D. Marine Corps

The ROK Marine Corps maintains a flawless defense posture to implement its role as a quick and multi-purpose counter force which is capable

▲ Amphibious exercise

of independent amphibious operations.

Its major exercises are combined and joint amphibious exercises. The major exercises are under the control of the JCS and CFC as is the training of each division or brigade as well as combat command training.

Combined and joint amphibious exercises are carried out more than two times in a year for embarlcation/advanced troop operations, ship-to-shore movement, and three dimensional military operations by participation of the division and brigade level military units.

In addition to that, the ROK Marine Corps executes a combined River Crossing exercise, combined Corps of Engineers' training, combined research training, combined Marine Corps ground combat training and also is participating in the C/JLOTS.

C/JLOTS: Combined/Joint Logistics Over the Shore

Division and brigade level training, which is necessary to achieve missions such as surprise landing attack, ground operations, and special operations, is carried out periodically by the annual plan and North-west islands defense drill and reinforcement training.

MTWS: Marine Training War-game Simulation

Moreover, war game training utilizing MTWS to enhance capability of military operations is being carried out two or three times in a year and is also check the activities process of division and brigade level commanders and staff.

Section 4. Training Reserve Forces as Key Combat Units

Advanced countries today are applying considerable weight to their reserve forces in order to utilize national defense resources while taking advantage of their standing forces as an essential military force.

A future war in the Korean Peninsula is expected to use all the national resources; therefore, an effective use of the reserve forces will be an important factor, which will determine the final consequence of war.

Accordingly, the ROK military is putting its emphasis on high-level training of the reserve forces through the reserve forces management and development of educational training. At the same time, while enhancing the capability of homeland defense operations and setting up an effective war-time mobilization posture to acquire well-trained reserve forces. This is connected to the directions of regular forces, given the limited national resources and mobilization environment.

1. Organization of the Reserve Forces and Resource Management

A. Organization of the Reserve Forces

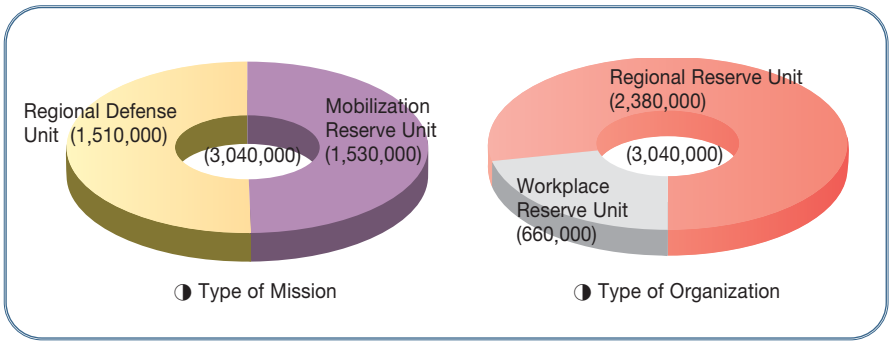
The reserve forces are divided into homeland reserve forces and mobilized reserve forces by their missions. The homeland reserve forces accomplish their missions in their areas of responsibility and the mobilized reserve forces execute equivalent combat missions to the regular army by calling up new military units in wartime or supplementing soldiers when necessary.

Currently the reserve forces number approximately 3,000,000 and they consist of regional reserve forces and work-place reserve forces.

The reserve forces are composed of ex-officers, warrant officers

or non-commissioned officers until their retirement age in accordance with the Military Personnel Law. Those who are discharged from the regular and reservist units can be called up for eight years of reserve force duty after finishing their military service.

〈Figure 3-7〉 Present State of the Reserve Forces



The organization of the reserve forces is shown in Figure 3-7.

The size of the Reserve Forces may be adjusted in connection with the regular forces by the year 2020. At the same time, the MND will cut down the service period of the reserve forces from eight to five years, after upgrading its combat capability to carry out military operations with the regular military forces in wartime.

B. Reserve Force Resource Management

Homeland reserve units, which play a central role in managing reserve resources in relevant areas and conducting homeland defense operations, are organized into units at the level of the administrative districts of *eup, myeon* and *dong* across the country. At the level of *si* (city), *gun* (county) and *gu* (ward), separate mobile units remain in operation.

Workforce reserve units range from brigades to squads, depending on the size of reservist resources at relevant workplace.

Moreover, the MND is utilizing a "national mobilization information system" which is shared among the MND, the Military

Manpower Administration, each Service Headquarters, and the reserve force unit in order to execute adminstration affairs connected with reserve force resources management and training.

2. Reserve Force Education and Training

The education and training of the ROK Reserve Forces is conducted for the purpose of "promoting proficiency in mobilization procedures and guaranteeing high-level combat capabilities after mobilization" and "nurturing homeland defense operation capabilities." Assuring that no impediment results to reservists' livelihood, the MND has constantly improved their training system by introducing more sophisticated and intensive programs so that reservists can rapidly exercise their combat capabilities.

The MND has improved the way of notifying reservists of their training duty by using the Internet so that all the reservists can choose the day of training of their own convenience. Table 3-8 shows annual training hours for reservists by the type of training.

▲The exercise utilizing survival equipment

〈Table 3-8〉 Annual Training Hours for Reservists by the Type of Training.

Unit: hours

Classification		Annual Training hours	Mobilization Training	Non-Mobilization Training/ Basic Homeland Defense Training	Etc. / Reserve Hour
Soldiers	Appointees for Mobilization	100	28 (2 nights and 3 days)		72
	Non-Appointees for Mobilization	100		36	64
	5th to 6th year (Appointees for Mobilization)	68		20	48
Cadres	Appointees for Mobilization, Officers of Non-Appointees for Mobilization	100	28 (2 nights and 3 days)		72
	Non-Commissioned Officers of Non-Appointees for Mobilization	100		36	64

▲ Offering location information over the Reserve Forces' training camp

Moreover, the MND is applying practical training methods which enable them to master combat action by setting up simulated facilities of the battle ground for reservists' training.

And the Reservists' training methods are making use of survival equipment and Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System are suitable to new generation and actual fighting in wartime.

By carrying out training on holidays, the MND guarantees the opportunity for reservist trainees who find it difficult to participate in exercises due to work commitments, it keeps on improving the system for reservists by offering GPS which enables them to find the training camp.

A. Mobilization Training

Mobilization training targets reservist resources in their first to fourth year of reserve service who are subject to mobilization into military units. On the basis of wartime missions, this training focuses on exercises to bolster mastery of military unit expansion/creation procedures, perform relevant duties at individual and team levels, and execute wartime operation plans.

Among the mobilized divisions, some of them executing quartering exercise at the operations area and those who do not participate in the drill have to reenter the relevant military unit for the exercise.

B. Non-Mobilization Training

Non-mobilization training targets reservists in their first to fourth year of reserve service who are not appointees for mobilization as well as those who failed to participate in mobilization training. It emphasizes the enhancement of the capacity for regional defense operations, MOS and individual tactics and combat skill and specialty ability by executing the training under the control of one's former military service and specialty unit. Reservists who served in the Navy or Air Force on active duty are also trained in the relevant military units.

C. Homeland Defense Training

Homeland defense training is classified into basic homeland defense training and homeland defense operation plan training. Basic homeland defense training is conducted for reservists in their fifth to sixth year of reserve service. It stresses the enhancement of the ability to carry out homeland defense operations by selecting tasks essential to the execution of military missions and allowing trainees to master required tasks.

The homeland defense operation training plan targets reservists who are not appointees for mobilization among the reserve resources in their first to fourth year of reserve service, and reservists in their fifth to sixth year of reserve service. It is carried out two times a year.

Chapter
4

Strengthening Future-oriented Defense Capabilities

Section 1. Buildup of an Elite Military Force

Section 2. Development of the Future-oriented ROK-US Alliance

Section 3. Promotion of External Military Cooperation

Section 4. Mitigation of Inter-Korean Military Tension

Section 1. Buildup of an Elite Military Force

The ROK military is increasing its quality-based defense capabilities to ensure self-reliant defense planning and operation capability on the basis of self-reliant war deterrence and defense-sufficient military capabilities.

The military will be equipped with surveillance and reconnaissance capabilities, established with a C4I system to guarantee integrated operation of efficient combat power, to secure maneuvering and precision-guided strike capabilities, and consolidate the increasing defense industry in addition to defense R&D.

1. The Process and Evaluation of Military Capabilities Buildup

The ROK military, which maintained its forces by depending on free military assistance from the US, has undertaken force reinforcement by its own defense expenditure since 1974.

It succeeded in the domestic production of conventional weapons which began with the copied production of basic weapons under the name "Project Yulgok." It achieved the modernization of military equipment through foreign imports of state-of-the-art weapons, and eventually reached a phase of conducting its own domestic R&D.

While local provocation has taken place occasionally over the past 53 years since the Korean War, the ROK Armed Forces have deterred war on the Korean Peninsula through the use of cooperative security, based on the ROK-US alliance, as well as by taking efforts aimed at self-reliant defense. The ROK's current military capabilities have come to maintain a qualitative edge over North Korea's capabilities despite its quantitative inferiority.

As a result of having prepared for potential threats of the future, the ROK military, at present, is establishing a stepping stone that will enable it to secure advanced key military capabilities in

response to future warfare.

2. Objectives and Directions of Military Capabilities Buildup

The ROK Armed Forces makes every effort to maintain a military readiness posture which is able to cope with existing North Korea's and other potential military threats in the future. Enhancing "its self-reliant war deterrence capability," in consideration of national circumstances and limited available resources, it continues increasing its military capabilities so as to secure "defense-sufficient military capabilities" sufficient to combat potential military threats. The direction to be taken for improving military capabilities is as follows.

First, the ROK military will reinforce the military capabilities required to convert a manpower-intensive and conventional force structure into a technology-intensive and qualitatively advanced force structure. Second, the force structure is being developed into an intelligence, knowledge and network-centric structure. This increases the suitability for a warfighting concept of "surveillance, reconnaissance-command, and control-strike." Third, the military will ensure the efficient operation of high-tech weapons systems by consolidating basic force capabilities and seeking force integration pursuant to the High-Low Mix concept. Fourth, the military will push ahead with early attainment of independent development capabilities for high-tech weapons systems through intensified defense R&D in the long term.

As the nuclear threat has materialized as a result of North Korea's nuclear test in October 2006, the military will increase identification and supplement emerging demands for surveillance and reconnaissance, precision strikes, and an interception and protection force.

Defense-sufficient military capabilities: Defensive military capabilities with which a country can deter the enemy's attack and unilateral coercion of its national interest, and which the enemy doesn't regard as a threat.

High-Low Mix concept: To place weapons systems with high performance and systems with low performance together in the disposition of equipment.

3. Improvement Plan of Defense Capabilities

A. The 2006 Plan

The total 2006 defense budget, 22.5129 trillion won, has

increased by 6.7% since 2005. This includes cost of improving defense capabilities of 7.4994 trillion won which has augmented by 16.0% since 2005. The pure improvement cost is 5.8077 trillion won. 1.9074 trillion won in working expenses was also required for parts and miscellaneous items. Major projects continued in 2006 and new projects are shown in Table 4-1.

〈Table 4-1〉 Major Projects Continuing in 2006 and New Projects

Classification	Continued Projects	New Projects
Surveillance & Reconnaissance / Command & Control	• AWACS • Ground tactical C4I system	• Military satellite communication equipment • Ground surveillance radar
Maneuver / Firepower	• K1A1 tank • K-9 self-propelled artillery	• landing-attack armored vehicle • GOP scientific alert system
Maritime / Landing Force	• Gwanggaeto-II/III-class destroyer • Jangbogo-II-class submarine	• Next-generation escort vessel
Air / Guided Weapons	• F-15K fighter • T-50	• Air-to-surface guided missile
R & D	• Intermediate-altitude unmanned surveillance aircraft • Korean-model maneuver helicopter • Intermediate-high altitude anti-aircraft weapon system, etc.	

▲ T-50 Trainer

▲ K-9 Self-propelled Artillery

▲ Gwanggaeto-II-class Destroyer

B. Mid-term (2007-2011) Defense Plan

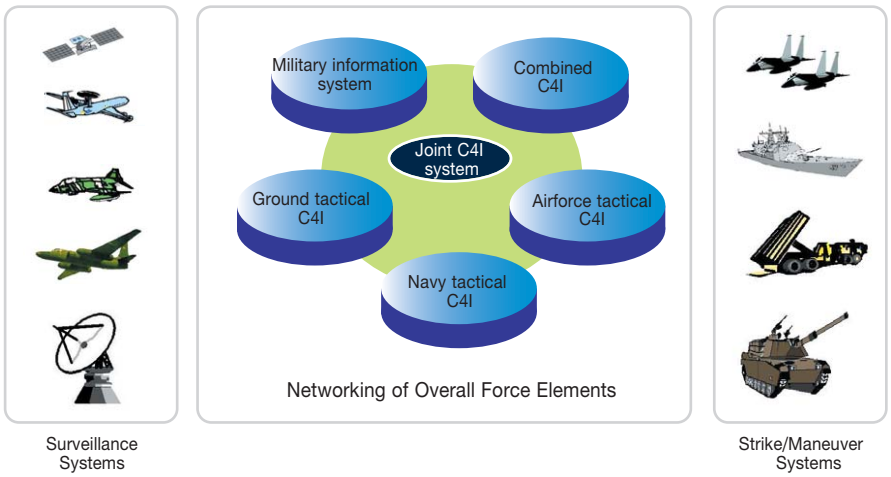
Improvement projects of various defense capabilities will be conducted during the mid-term from 2007 to 2011, under the aim of "reinforcing a self-reliant war deterrence capability and establishing a basis for defense-sufficient force capabilities." This plan focuses on securing independent surveillance and reconnaissance (Sensor); building up the C4I system for integrated operation of combat power; acquiring long-range strike capabilities and shooter to combat unspecified threats of the future; shoring up the existing basic force; R&D for self-reliance of the technology; and strengthening the national defense industry.

The level of surveillance and reconnaissance force aims at securing the capabilities of independent information collection over the Korean Peninsula and surrounding areas. The acquisition plan for the AWACS, high-altitude unmanned reconnaissance plane, tactical reconnaissance and information collection systems will be executed to ensure the strategic level of surveillance and early warning.

Regarding battlefield management systems, the MND plans to establish a network-centric warfare infrastructure by incorporating strategic and tactical C4I systems and military satellite communication systems into force by 2011, which will enable all echelons to perform real-time "surveillance, reconnaissance-command, and control-strike." For this, the military intends to give priority to establishing KJCCS linked from the Joint Chiefs of Staff to each field army operational command, and continues to upgrade its function. It also plans to incorporate a tactical unit-level C4I system into the force and integrate a combined processing system of military information dealing with each field army's and echelon's military information collected in linkage with combined command/control mechanism. Furthermore, tactical communication systems will be upgraded to next generation communication systems. Such concepts of battlefield management system are illustrated in Table 4-2.

KJCCS:
Korea Joint Command & Control System

〈Table 4-2〉 Concepts of Battlefield Management System



▲ F-15K

▲ 214-class Submarine

The MND plans to incorporate into the force K-9 self-propelled artillery guns, large-caliber MLRS (munitions), Aegis destroyers, 214-class (1,800t) submarines, ship-to-ship guided missiles, F-15K and next generation fighters, and oil supply aircraft, etc. to ensure its long-distance strike capability and to combat potential threats in the future.

The MND will ensure continued improvement of outdated or inefficient forces in a bid to enhance the existing basic force capabilities. To this end, the Army intends to both reorganize one mechanized and one armored unit respectively and incorporate K1A1 tanks into the force, and also to secure anti-artillery detection radars. The Navy's new escort ships will replace the 7,000 ton Aegis destroyer and outdated escort ships providing an alternative force. The Air Force will launch new projects related to large amounts of cargo and laser-guided bombs while producing the T-50 (advanced trainer) and seeking an extension of the F-5E/F's lifespan. In addition, it will incorporate anti-air

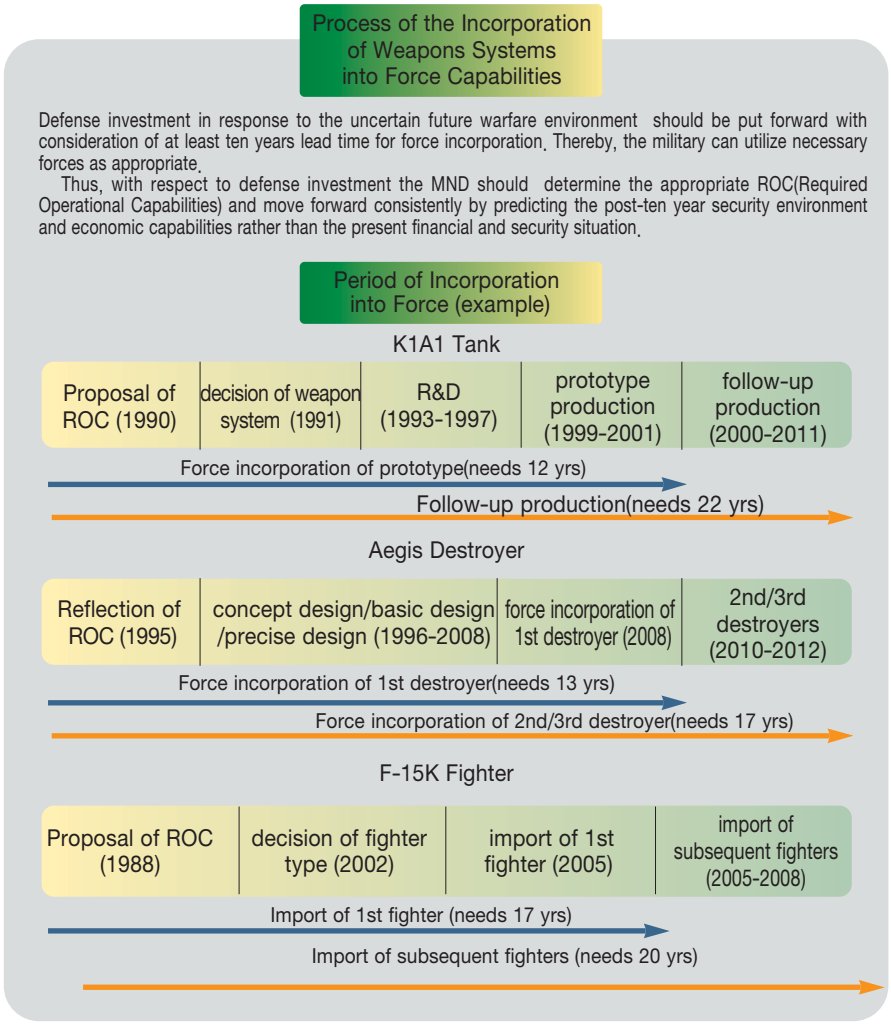
▲ K1A1 Tank

▲ Cheonma Short Range Anti-Aircraft Guided Missile

guided weapons, SAM-X and new decontamination vehicles into the force to increase its air defense and protective capabilities.

C. Direction of Mid-term (2008-2012) Defense Program

"Mid-term (2008-2012) Defense Program" will reflect the force demands to prepare for an altered security context such as North Korea's nuclear test in consideration of the "Government's Mid-term (2006 - 2010) Fiscal Management Plan." During this period, in parallel with the stable execution of the ongoing projects, the MND will attempt to revise and supplement the Defense Mid-term



Program encompassing the appropriate allocation of resources regarding new forces verified in terms of their validity.

4. Defense R&D and Fostering of Defense Industry

A. Development of Defense R&D Policy

Advanced countries funnel their investments for defense budgets into the assurance of key force capability and R&D of cutting-edge core technologies, in consideration of future battlefield environments so as to get an edge on not only defense science and technology but also intelligence capabilities. As shown by past practices of the ROK's defense acquisition, the MND has tried to enhance its force capabilities in the short-term by purchasing foreign weapon systems rather than by investing in domestic R&D. Accordingly, the technological gaps between the ROK and advanced countries were widened due to both insufficient investment in development of domestic technologies and avoidance of technological transfer by advanced countries.

Accordingly, the MND should establish a new foundation not only to set the stage for mid- and long-term policies beneficial to defense science and technology, but to embody it systematically. Toward that end, the MND is moving to build up a self-reliant defense capacity, competitive to that of developed nations, with the core technology necessary for R&D of state-of-the-art weapons systems and having a development capability for future high-tech weapons systems.

B. Status regarding R&D of Weapon Systems

▲ UAV

The ROK military has centralized its investment for the improvement of core and leading technologies in the 2000's, the era of innovation of defense science and technology. As a result, it has ended the development of high-tech weapons systems encompassing short-range surface-to-air guided weapons, anti-sonic

torpedo systems, reconnaissance drones for corps level units, electronic warfare equipment for ships, KO-1 control aircraft, ship-to-ship guided weapons, portable anti-air guided weapons, new-model light torpedoes, real-time C4I systems, the first T-50 supersonic training aircraft for the ROK, externally fitted electronic jamming devices for fighters, and sea port surveillance systems, etc.

In particular, the military has exported a basic trainer KT-1 to Indonesia in early 2000, with further sales contracts. Recently it was involved in export consultation with the Philippines and Latin American countries while at the same time conducting sales negotiations for the K-1 self-propelled artillery which it exported to Turkey in 2000.

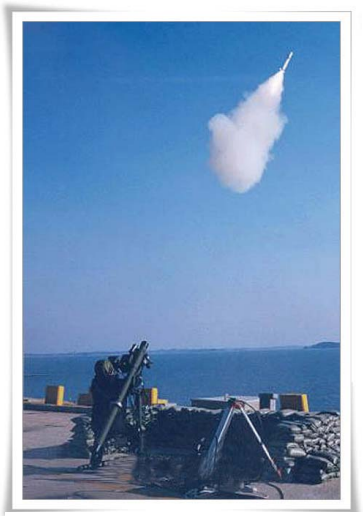
▲ KO-1 Tactical Controller

▲ Ship-to-Ship Guided Weapons

C. Establishing the Foundation of Domestic Defense Industry

As a consequence of that the ROK government stepped up the infrastructure of the defense industry. 1,405 firms registered as of the end of 2005, are currently producing defense industry related materials, and are accomplishing remarkable growth making Korea the 12th ranking or highest production/exporting country of supersonic aircraft in the world. The ROK is reaching a new turning point in the improvement of defense capability, procurement of logistic goods and the buildup of the defense industry with the enactment of "the Defense Business Act of 2006."

Despite continued growth in the defense industry, the operation rate of defense industry companies remains at comparatively low levels compared to the manufacturing sectors as indicated in Table 4-3.



▲ KP-SAM

〈Table 4-3〉 Management Status of Defense Industrial Complex (2001-2005)

Classification	Sale (Unit:100mil.won)	Ordinary Profit (Unit:100mil.won)	Operation (%)	
			Defense Industry	Manufacturing Industry
2001	37,013	-1,149	50.3	75.3
2002	43,447	253	54.5	78.3
2003	42,681	555	57.3	78.3
2004	46,440	863	56.1	80.3
2005	53,165	1,486	57.8	79.8

※Source : 2006 management analysis of defense industry complex (the Korea Defense Industry Association, Nov. 2006)

Institution of specialization & grouping: To be introduced in 1993 for preventing double investment and promoting technical development in the field of defense industry

In this context, the MND will move forward to improve "the institution of specialization & grouping" for the sake of elevating the competitiveness of defense industrial firms, and to step up the defense industrial infrastructure through the reasonable operation of defense industrial materials and the system designating specific firms. As this system is one for stable procurement and quality control of military-exclusive equipment and materiel which are difficult to be obtained when market economy principles are applied, the MND plans to develop the system to nurture companies producing major goods, such as strategic materials, even after the abolishment of the above system.

Furthermore, the MND is moving ahead with cutting back indirect expenses on exporting goods through the exemption of the rental fee for technologies that the government retains to enhance export competitiveness.

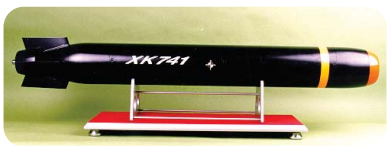
Hereafter, the MND will continue to create demand for the defense industry along with the expansion of investment for defense R&D, and smoothen the enforcement of the planned investment. Along with decision making reflecting both the technological and production capacity of the domestic defense industry, it will expedite systematic defense industrial policy such as the continuous improvement of the system reflecting the opinions of the Armed Forces and the defense industrial complex.

At the same time, on the basis of survey and analysis regarding defense industrial infrastructure, the MND plans to encourage firms having the same or similar kinds of businesses to streamline facilities voluntarily in the mid- and long term perspective. It also

plans to enhance the structural competitiveness of the defense industrial sectors through highly experienced R&D and production personnel-centered reorganization of the defense industry areas.

▲ K-200 ROK-made Armored Vehicle

D. Expansion of International Cooperation in Regard to Defense Industry



▲ Light Torpedo

International defense industry cooperation ought to be intensified to strengthen the export support of Korean-made defense industry goods, and guarantee stable operation of introduced weaponry as well as the import of advanced technologies from abroad. To this end, the MND has concluded defense industry cooperation agreements with 24 countries and accordingly expanded exchanging countries including Europe, South America and Asia. In addition, it has entered into agreements with them on quality assurance, exchange of price information, and exchange of technical data in order to guarantee the long term and stable operation of imported weaponry.

By holding joint committee meetings regularly on defense industry cooperation with those nations which concluded defense industry cooperation agreements with the ROK, the MND carries out a support role for exporting domestic defense products, and executing international joint cooperative business. It also introduces advanced technology and makes consultations to enable smooth logistics support of foreign import equipment. Furthermore, it endeavors to seek new markets for defense industry export in South America, Asia and the Middle East countries.

▲ A scene of "Defense Asia 2006"

Being aware that the broadening of defense industry export is essential to maintain the complexity of the domestic defense industry, the MND focuses its military diplomatic capability on the expansion of defense industry export by making up military diplomacy guidelines and paving the way for the revitalization of defense

industry export. To achieve this goal, while consolidating on-the-spot export support activities by defense attaches and establishing support systems government-wide for defense industry exports, the MND plans to reinforce the organization bearing exclusive charge of its export by augmenting export support manpower.

Section 2. Development of the Future-oriented ROK-US Alliance

The ROK-US alliance has been playing a pivotal role to maintain peace and stability of the Korean Peninsula on the basis of mutual respect and common values such as liberal democracy and market economy that the two allies have built over half a century. In the mean time, the ROK-US alliance faces a new era of transformation in accordance with radical changes in internal and external security environments, post 9/11 attack and the ROK's increasing national power.

Holding the SPI (Security Policy Initiative) meetings since 2005, the two nations exert all efforts to set up a road map of the future ROK-US alliance in addition to monitoring follow-up measures of the USFK rearrangement.

Hence, the ROK-US alliance will be driven to "comprehensive, dynamic and mutually beneficial alliance relations" encompassing various fields such as politics, economy, society and culture, as well as the military, which contributes to the maintenance of peace and stability in both the Korean Peninsula and Northeast Asia.

SPI:
Security Policy Initiative

1. Realignment of the ROK-US Alliance

A. Background

The ROK-US alliance is now undergoing a process of future-oriented alignment and development according to changes in the security environment such as the progress of inter-Korean relations and changes in US security and military strategies toward uncertain security threats.

The US is pursuing changes from a threat-based to a capability-based strategy in order to respond to trans-national and non-military threats that have newly emerged since the September 11 terrorist attacks.

To realize concepts of such a military strategy, the US is

▲ ROK-US Summit (Sept. 2006), Washinton, D.C.

pursuing not only a high-tech, mobile and light military capability, but also a realignment of its military bases stationed all over the world.

The GPR focuses, in principle, on the expansion of allied and friendly nations' role. The ROK military is also requested to expand its role sharing according to an increase in defense capability.

From the Korean point of view, growing has been the national demand that Korea seeks for mutually beneficial, cooperative and mature allied relations with the US on the basis of its increased national power derived from economic growth.

B. Relocaton of the USFK

A relocation project for the Yongsan Garrison has been discussed since March 1988, not only to meet the national desire for the transfer of foreign troops stationed in the center of Seoul but also to provide the conditions for the stable stationing of the USFK in conjunction with a balanced development of the land, and the strengthening of the ROK-US alliance.

This project was, in fact, suspended due to the excessive cost of the relocation in 1993. The necessity for the resumption of this project, however, was proposed with the construction of USFK apartments in Yongsan Army Garrison, December 2001. Thereafter, the two sides reached an agreement on the principle of an early transfer of the garrison at the ROK-US summit in May 2005, and since then close negotiations have been in progress.

As a result of the negotiation, the ROK-US agreed to transfer the Yongsan Garrison involving UNC/CFC to the Pyeongtaek area with a target date of the end of 2008. This relocation project began by concluding the Yongsan garrison transition agreement (UA/IA) together with the ratification of the National Assembly in December 2004. Due to the time needed to secure the site because of the residents' opposition, evaluation of the environmental impact, and additionally the negotiation of cost sharing between the

UA (Umbrella Agreement): This document takes the form of a treaty outlining the principles, sites and costs of the Yongsan Garrison relocation. It consists of a preamble and 8 articles.

IA (Implementing Agreement): This document is also in the form of a treaty stipulating details necessary to the implementation of the Yongsan Garrison relocation plan. It consists of a preamble and 7 articles.

ROK and the US, the deadline for the transfer will be determined on the basis of ROK-US consultation.

The relocation of the US 2nd infantry division is a project to integrate subordinate units of the division which perform their missions in several places located in the northern area of Kyunggi province and aims at the balanced development of national land, the solution of local residents' inconveniences, and a US plan for relocation.

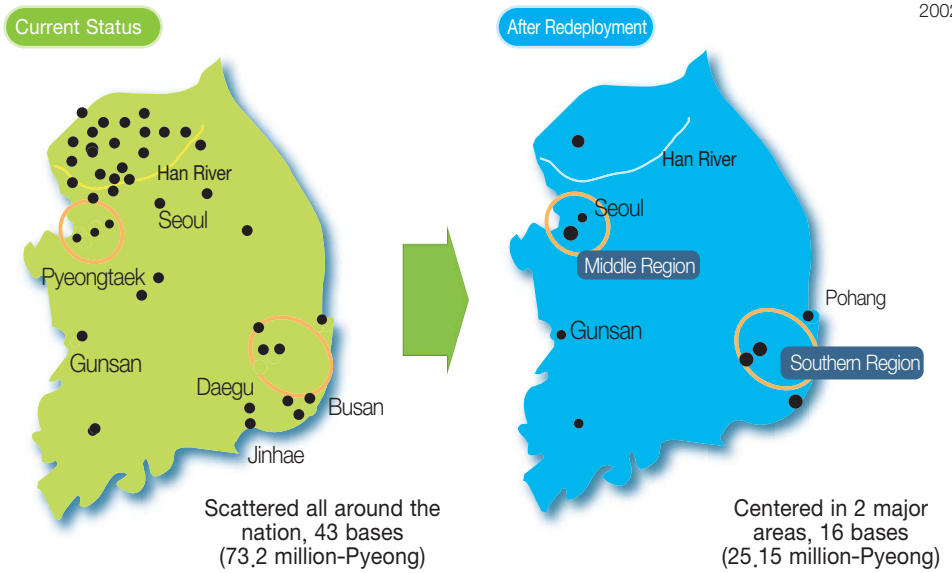
In the 1st stage, the USFK will integrate small dispersed bases stationed north of the Han River into Dongducheon and Euijeongbu area by 2006, and in the 2nd stage, major bases will be moved to Pyungtaek and Gunsan area by 2008.

The USFK is scheduled to be redeployed into 16 bases within 2 regions as shown in Table 4-4. During this process, more than 50 million Pyung will be transferred to the ROK.

Site preparation and construction for infrastructure to relocate the 2nd infantry division of US will be completed by late 2008. To move ahead with it smoothly, the ROK and US concluded the "Amended Agreement on LPP" in 2004.

LPP
(Land Partnership Plan):
During the 33rd SCM (Nov. 15, 2001), ROK and US signed a letter of intent on LPP, which was ratified by the ROK National Assembly at its plenary session on October 31, 2002.

〈Table 4-4〉 Relocaton of USFK Bases



After the ratification of the National Assembly in December 2004, the MND continued to exert all efforts to inform Pyungtaek residents of governmental policy along with calling for their understanding through various ways such as resident meetings, briefing sessions to the local civic group, and press meetings. While seeking for various measures to support for the local residents' life, the MND simultaneously pursued purchasing sites of bases scheduled to be transferred.

As a result of governmental efforts, the ownership of sites on US was transfered to the MND in January 2006. The MND is thereafter preparing facility construction including surveys regarding the planned area and ground investigation.

The ROK government made a "master plan for the facilities" in 2006, and plans to undertake foundation work in 2007, after completing an evaluation of the environmental impact; an investigation of the index of cultural assets; measures of migration such as support for migration of residents in the area concerned; and the establishment of a migration complex.

C. Transfer of Military Mission and Modernization of the USFK

(1) Transfer of Military Mission

The USFK is transferring of some military missions to the ROK military pursuant to an agreement between the ROK-US in the 34th SCM, December 2002.

Of the ten military missions that have been assumed by the USFK, with the exception of day and night search and rescue operations, the ROK military has already taken over the JSA security mission, the decontamination operation mission in the rear area, expediting the burying of mines, the management of the air to surface firing range, mission of counter-fire operation headquarters, the control of the main supply route, the operation of counter-SOP forces at sea, the control of close air support (CAS), and weather forecasting. Day and night search and rescue operations will be transferred by the end of 2008. Although the two nations agreed to review the transfer of additional military

SCM (Security Consultative Meeting): This annual consultative body comprising the defense ministers of the two countries was established to discuss and resolve major security issues in the wake of North Korea's attempted attack on Cheongwadae and seizure of the USS Pueblo in 1968. With the discussion of the potential withdrawal of the US 7th division in 1971, the SCM was upgraded into a full-fledged security consultative body both in name and substance involving high ranking defense and diplomatic officials of the two countries. It directs strategic directives to the Military Committee.

JSA: Joint Security Area

missions in the 37th SCM (October 2005), the two decided to integrate it into the tasks for transition of the OPCON in accordance with the agreement to coordinate the military command relationship.

The transfer of the military mission of the USFK is meaningful in terms of the improvement of Korea's leading role in its defense as well as the expansion of the mission corresponding to the increment of Korea's military capabilities. Taking into account Korea's military capabilities on the basis of this backdrop, the two countries will move ahead with the transfer of the military mission on an gradual and phased basis.

(2) Modernization of the USFK

The ROK-US committed to reduce the USFK by 12,500 personnel in 3 stages by 2008. If downsizing is implemented according to the agreed plan, the size of the USFK troops stationed will be reduced to about 25,000 troops by the end of 2008 from 37,500 in 2003. The step-by-step downsizing scheme agreed by both sides is shown in Table 4-5.

〈Table 4-5〉 Stage-by-stage downsizing scheme of the USFK for 2004-2008

Stage	Year	Personnel decreased	Personnel stationed
1st	2004	5,000	32,500
2nd	2005~2006	5,000	27,500
3rd	2007~2008	2,500	25,000

To complement the vacuum for a military capability caused by the downsizing of the USFK, the US stepped up the USFK's capability by aiding its force modernization through the investment of 11 billion dollars into 150 areas over 4 years until 2006, and now is pursuing the maximum force operation by means of reorganizing the USFK. Its force modernization is being primarily carried out by focusing on the strength of combat units, C4ISR and so forth.

C4ISR:
Command, Control, Communications, Computers, Surveillance and Reconnaissance

2. Transition of Wartime Operational Control and the New Military Structure for the ROK-US Alliance

A. Background

President Rhee Syngman, the Supreme Commander of the Korean Military at the time of the Korean War in 1950, handed over the ROK's operational control (OPCON) to the UN forces commander, General McArthur, inevitably to protect the country from a national crisis. The OPCON was transferred from the UN forces commander to the CFC commander with the creation of the CFC in 1978 and then a peacetime OPCON was transferred to the ROK Joint Chiefs of Staff at the end of 1994. Thereafter, the CFC commander remained in charge of the wartime OPCON and the peacetime CODA.

The discussion to transit the OPCON began with a ROK-US study and consultation on OPCON transition based on the grounds of both the former presidential candidate, Roh Tae-woo's campaign pledge in August 1987, entitled "the transition of OPCON and the transfer of Yongsan garrison," and the "EASI" in 1990-1992 following the "Nunn-Warner Amendment" in 1989.

At the 13th MCM in 1993, the ROK-US concluded to transit a peacetime (during armistice) OPCON between 1993-1995, and to consult regarding the transition of the wartime OPCON after 1996. As a result, the ROK government recovered the peacetime OPCON first on December 1, 1994.

After 1993, KIDA and RAND carried out a joint study on the development of the future alliance between the two nations. There were director-level studies and consultations on the direction of the future ROK-US Alliance and the change in the role of the ROK-USFK between the defense ministries from 1995 to 2002.

In addition, the ROK-US defense authorities have been assessing their role in future security situations and conducting the JVS at FOTA and SPI consultations since 2003, and on this basis, continue to study and consult about the future command relationship of the ROK and US.

CODA (Combined Delegated Authority): To commit 6 items of authorities such as combined crisis management, works for OPLAN and combined exercises to ROK forces units operationally controlled in the wartime

Nunn-Warner Amendment: Legislative bill to add the view of Congress regarding ROK-US relations to bill submitted for the purpose of approving budget for US DOD's military function and stipulating troops level in FY 1990-1991

EASI (East Asia Strategic Initiative): The review report that US DOD submitted to the Congress according to the request of the 'Nunn-Warner Amendment'

MCM: Military Committee Meeting

FOTA: Future of the ROK-US Alliance Policy Initiative

JVS (Joint Vision Study): Joint study to design a blueprint for developing the ROK-US alliance consistent with changing security situation pursuant to the agreement at the 36th SCM in 2004

B. Current Status

On the basis of such a historical background and a study to develop the future ROK-US alliance, the two sides have started substantive talks with a common position of accelerating the discussion on the wartime OPCON in the 37th SCM in October 2005.

Concluding the TOR regarding the study and report on the road map for transition of wartime OPCON, the ROK and US made a road map for the wartime OPCON transition through close consultation of the combined working group. In this context, the ROK and US agreed, in the SCM held in October 2006, to "expeditiously complete the transition of OPCON to the ROK after October 15, 2009, but not later than March 15, 2012."

TOR (Terms of Reference): Document to agree to the basic contents (purpose, principle, subject, schedule, etc.) necessary for ROK-US to study/report command relationship including the transition of the wartime OPCON in March 2006.

Roadmap: It refers to an approximate route of movement selecting destination and intermediate position to reach a specific position, and involves the type of the ROK-US command relationship to transit wartime operational control and prior tasks to implement it without detailed time schedule.

The two nations agreed on four principles with regard to the wartime OPCON transition: (1) it is based on the "ROK-US Mutual Defense Treaty," (2) it will ensure the continued stationing of USFK and deployment of US reinforcement troops, (3) it will continue US support for bridging capabilities such as intelligence assets, (4) it will sustain combined readiness posture and deterrence capability.

Something to be prepared for the implementation of the agreed road map is to substantially build the capabilities necessary for the independent exercise of the wartime OPCON. This will involve materialization of a new ROK-US military cooperation system and the establishment of a series of systems, such as the intelligence and crisis management cooperation system, echelon-by-echelon operation plans and the ROK-US combined exercise system.

C. Military Structure of the New ROK-US Alliance

The military structure of the future ROK-US alliance, after transition of wartime OPCON, is a new system of joint defense in a "supporting-supported" pattern and for this, the ROK JCS and USFK plan to establish close cooperative relations to set up a Military Cooperation Center (MCC).

The MCC will ensure close cooperation, as a core organization of the ROK-US joint defense system consisting of more than ten standing or non-standing sub-bodies, in essential fields to maintain

a deterrence and readiness posture, such as intelligence and crisis management, war plans, exercise and training, etc. By forming strong cooperative systems in the area of intelligence and the operation of air force capability, a robust joint defense system equivalent to the current CFC system will be established.

Through the stable management of North Korea's military threat, the advance in South-North relations, groundwork for military confidence building, and a realignment of the USFK, the ROK and US will not make the solid ROK-US alliance weaker in its course of transitting a wartime OPCON, and it will maintain the ROK-US joint readiness posture firmly to deter any war.

3. Ensuring Conditions for the Stable Stationing of the USFK

A. Defense Cost Sharing

Cost sharing contribution: It refers to the financial assistance from the ROK government to partially cover the expenses associated with the US military presence in the country according to the "Agreement between the Republic of Korea and the United States of America Concerning Special Measures Relating to Article V of the Agreement under Article IV of the Mutual Defense Treaty between the Republic of Korea and the United States of America Regarding Facilities and Areas and the Status of United States Armed Forces in the Republic of Korea (also known as the Special Measures Agreement)."

CDIP: Combined Defense Improvement Project

Defense cost sharing (consultation) implies that the ROK government will pay a portion of the stationing cost of the USFK through the conclusion of the "Special Measures Agreement (SMA)" with the US. The ROK government has been sharing a portion of the USFK stationing cost since 1991, taking into account the sharing ratio between the US forces and other friendly nations; the extent of the USFK's contribution to the defense for Korea; and the need to develop the ROK-US military alliance into a "partnership-based security cooperation."

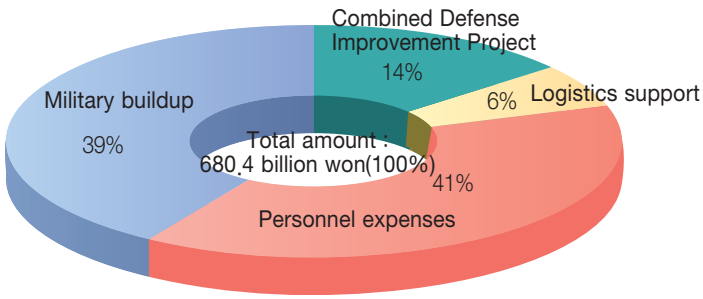
The cost sharing contribution by the ROK is applied to four areas: (1) labor costs regarding Korean employees by the USFK; (2) military construction costs for building non-combat facilities including barracks; (3) CDIP costs to back up combat/combat support facilities including ammunition dumps; and (4) logistics support costs to provide goods and services including railway/automobile transport support. In 2004, the ROK government paid 622 million dollars as its cost sharing contribution.

The negotiation of defense cost sharing has been carried out between the ROK Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade (MOFAT) and the US Department of State since the major authority dealing

with it changed from the MND, which was in charge till 2004, to MOFAT in 2005.

The defense cost-sharing paid after 2005 was determined in June 2005 through several senior-level talks initiated in November 2004. The two nations agreed to reduce the defense cost-sharing to 680.4 billion won which would be paid in the Korean currency (won) effective for 2 years and freezing any rate of increase during that period. The backdrop to the decrease of the defense cost-sharing reflects the change of environment such as the relocation of Yongsan Garrison, LPP, the dispatch of troops to Iraq, downsizing of the USFK, etc. The distribution ratio of the defense cost-sharing per area is indicated below in Table 4-6.

〈Table 4-6〉 2006 Distribution Ratio of Defense Cost-sharing per Area



The ROK and US had held six rounds of senior-level meetings during the period from May to December 2006, to negotiate defense cost-sharing after 2007, which, at last, reached a final agreement on December 6, 2006. This agreement includes a validity period of 2 years and assigns an amount of 725.5 billion won as the 2007 defense cost-sharing. It confirms the 2008 cost will be affected by the increase rate of market price in addition to the 2007 cost. The defense cost-sharing has been paid in the Korean currency (won) in whole since 2005 to secure the stability and predictability of the budget.

B. Redressing of Public Grievances and Improvement of Training Conditions

Training of the USFK in a war-like setting is essential to maintaining a solid combined defense posture. However, accidents and damage caused by the US forces as well as severe noise from US Air Force firing ranges have left many people in the ROK, including local residents, discontent with the situation. This triggers a deterioration in the training conditions.

To resolve this issue, the two countries took measures to improve the operation of SOFA to improve the surrounding circumstances of the training grounds and to implement safety measures which must be observed by the USFK during training. In particular, the ROK government took measures such as the installation of safety facilities, construction of sidewalks, and improvement/expansion of winding or bottleneck roads in the northern part of Gyeonggi Province. Moreover, the USFK is seeking to improve its relations with local residents by adopting comprehensive safety measures during training in conjunction with giving prior notice of unit movement plans.

In the context of regarding the ROK-US alliance as a basis for the sake of national security, it is a very significant task to stably manage an allied country and to ensure the proper training conditions for the USFK which is indispensable for the maintenance of combined defense posture. Therefore, by minimizing people's damage and inconvenience, the government is seeking to improve all conditions so that the USFK can carry on with an effective training program.

▲ ROK-US friendly tug-of-war game

C. Activities for Strengthening Ties between ROK and US

Based on the common belief that it is imperative to promote mutual understanding by consolidating human relations, the ROK and the US are jointly developing and implementing programs aimed at boosting friendly ties among the ROK Armed Forces,

USFK, and local residents.

In a bid to increase mutual goodwill activities, the ROK military has been implementing such programs as the establishment of brotherhood relationships between the ROK and US military units, events inviting USFK soldiers, and guardian programs for USFK soldiers. The USFK is also providing a wide variety of programs of the similar nature including the New Horizons Day, the Good Neighbor Program, and the Community Outreach Program. Furthermore, the USFK is endeavoring to win support of the local people by assisting farmers during busy seasons, flood relief, and medical support.

New Horizons Day:
An education program that the USFK runs to enhance understanding of new soldiers regarding ROK's social and cultural traits as well as public sentiments.

Such efforts contribute enormously to creating stable working conditions for the USFK by providing opportunities for US soldiers and South Koreans, who have different cultures and backgrounds, to share a sense of cultural unity.

Good Neighbor Program:
A program operated to consolidate the ties between the USFK and local residents under the supervision of the Commander-in-Chief of the CFC

The ROK government continues to make combined efforts with the USFK to prevent and minimize inconvenience or harm to the local people dwelling near US bases. By doing so, residents nearby the US bases and USFK as good neighbors will develop a new cooperative relationship that will contribute to local development, coexisting peacefully.

D. Development of the Future ROK-US Alliance

For the past 50 years, the ROK-US alliance has remained a cornerstone for the maintenance of peace and stability not only in the Korean Peninsula but in Northeast Asia. On this basis, the ROK-US relations have expanded further in the fields of close security cooperation, vital economic exchange and civilian cooperation. The ROK-US alliance is adapting itself to changes in the security

"Korea-U.S. alliance is quite solid now and will continue to develop in healthy manner in the years to come."

From congratulatory remarks by President Roh at a Korea Military Academy commencement (March 3, 2006)

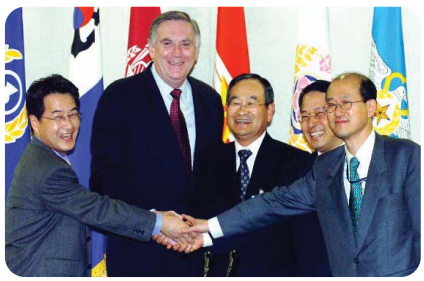
environment and is extending the value of democracy and market economy beyond a simple military alliance.

Based on the successful agreement of FOTA, the two countries reached the consensus that it was necessary to organize a similar consultative body and to engage in comprehensive discussions about not only outstanding issues of the present but also agendas associated with future development of the alliance. Thus, they have been placing SPI in operation since 2005. In this body, the ROK-US joint study has been assigned three agendas: Comprehensive Security Assessment (CSA), Joint Vision Study (JVS), and Command Relations Study (CRS).

CSA: Comprehensive Security Assessment

JVS: Joint Vision Study

CRS: Command Relations Study



▲ SPI Meeting in 2006

In the Joint Communique of the 38th SCM held in Washington on October 20, 2006, the US Defense Secretary D. Rumsfeld assured solid commitment and expedient support of the US pursuant to the ROK-US Mutual Defense Treaty including the continuation of extended deterrence through the provision of a US nuclear umbrella.

☞ Refer to Appendix 7: "The 38TH Annual ROK-US SCM Joint Communique"

The ROK-US alliance now remains more solid than ever. In the future, the ROK-US will develop their relations into a "comprehensive, dynamic, and mutually beneficial alliance," by readjusting the alliance on the basis of reflecting the progress of North-South relations as well as a change of security environment.

▲ The 38th SCM, 2006

Section 3. Promotion of External Military Cooperation

The objective of the ROK's military diplomacy is not only to deter war on the Korean Peninsula but to secure international support and assistance in the case of an emergency. It is further to resolve the North Korean nuclear problem peacefully by establishing mutual trust with friendly nations, and more broadly, to contribute to international peace while improving peace and stability in Northeast Asia.

To achieve this goal, the ROK military maintains and develops balanced military relations with neighboring countries along with the consolidated ROK-US alliance. It is also actively pressing ahead with the mutilateral military cooperation and expanding military exchanges among regional countries.

Moreover, according to the remarkable economic growth and the development of democratization, the ROK military contributes to international peace and stability by actively participating in international peace keeping and arms control activities to carry out a role corresponding to national prestige in the international community.

1. Military Relations With Neighboring Countries

A. ROK-Japan Relations

Japan shares the universal values of democracy and a market economy system with the ROK, and it is an important neighboring country which exerts joint efforts for the sake of regional stability and peace. The MND holds diverse working-level meetings regularly, such as the ROK-Japan defense ministerial talks, defense policy working-level meetings, and security policy conferences. Through the exchange of views concerning the assessment of security situations and the direction of defense policy, the two nations endeavor to extend the scope of mutual understanding and cooperation

▲ ROK-Japan delegates' conference on military exchange

for the stability and peace of the Korean Peninsula and in the region.

However, questions regarding matters of historical perception between the two countries and Japan's wrong insistence on the rights of possession over the Dok-do island, are regarded as factors that need to be overcome in favor of developing military exchanges and cooperation in a future-oriented direction.

Since the two nations' first defense ministerial meeting was held in 1994, they have been holding senior-military level exchanges such as exchange visits between the Chiefs of the Army, Navy and Air Force, working-level defense policy conferences, meetings between military authorities, and intelligence exchange conferences, etc. The personnel exchanges involving mutual exchange visits between staff colleges and cadets, and exchange of military personnel are being made more actively than ever. They also have been improving various military exchanges, such as ROK-Japan maritime search and rescue exercise, mutual visits of cargo airplane, and mutual cooperation (East Timor, Iraq) in international peace keeping activities.

In the future, maintaining firm military confidence and ties with Japan which has been formed thus far, the ROK military hopes to move forward to a "future-oriented ROK-Japan cooperative relationship" with the ROK-Japan summit in October 2006 providing the momentum. It will further materialize substantive security cooperation between the two nations in order to accomplish a Northeast Asian era of peace and prosperity and the regional and international cooperation in addition to a peaceful resolution of the North Korean nuclear issue.

B. ROK-China Relations

Due to the special nature of the regional security environment surrounding the Korean peninsula, more substantial and reciprocal military exchanges between the ROK and China are limited. The development of military relations between the two countries is, however, very significant for the sake of both for resolving pending security issues such as the North Korean nuclear issue and for stability and peace of the Korean Peninsula and in the Northeast

Asian region in the future. To this end, the two sides should diversify and revitalize mutual military exchanges which are at the beginning stage compared to other fields. The starting point should be a desire to expand the foundation of versatile military relations through regular and institutionalized exchanges based on mutual understanding and military dialogue.

▲ Naval Academy midshipmen' s port call in China

The ROK-China military exchanges have been steadily developing since the opening of ROK defense attache's office in Beijing in December 1993 and Chinese defense attache's office in Seoul in April 1994. They continue on the basis of a "full-fledged cooperative partnership" agreed by the two government leaders in July 2003.

Military exchanges between ROK and China consist of three levels such as military leader's level, working-level exchanges, and other exchanges. The military leader's exchanges are conducted in the form of mutual visits between the defense ministers, the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff (the Chief of General Staff), the Chiefs of the Army, Navy and Air Force, and field commanders (military regions commander and political commissar). The military working-level exchanges are largely performed between the Ministry of National Defense, the Joint Chiefs of Staff and persons in charge of intelligence and policy in the Army, Navy and Air Force. Additionally, annual defense academic conferences, military affairs studies, mutual visits by heads of educational institution, short-term visits/research studies by student officers of the Army, Navy and Air Force colleges, and various sorts of sports exchanges are in progress. The two nations also have been carrying out mutual visits of navy vessels and aircraft since 2001.

C. ROK-Russia Relations

Following the establishment of diplomatic relations in 1990, the ROK and Russia opened defense attache's offices in 1991. Since then, the two countries have made much progress in establishing systems for building military confidence and improving cooperation including military leaders' exchanges.

▲ Agreement to prevent dangerous military activities between ROK and Russia

The two countries have been forming a "constructive and complementary partnership" for 16 years since 1990 when bilateral diplomatic relations were established. President Roh Moo-hyun, who visited Russia in September 2004, stipulated bilateral relations as a comprehensive partnership of mutual confidence, which established a foothold for the two nations to take one step forward.

During the ROK defense minister's visit to Russia in April 2005, two defense ministers agreed that peace and stability in Northeast Asia would be indispensable to both countries' security, and further agreed to increase Russia's contribution in regard to inter-Korean relations and military exchange and cooperation. In addition, meetings, such as the first army delegation's conference held in 2005, defense policy working-level meetings held annually, and the military joint committee to implement the "Agreement to prevent dangerous military activities between ROK-Russia" provide opportunity to consolidate bilateral military confidence building and substantial military cooperation.

High-ranking military leaders' reciprocal visits, such as the Russian Air Force commander's visit to Korea in March 2006, Far Eastern region commander's visit to Korea in June 2006, and the ROK MND vice-minister's visit to Russia in September 2006, are in active progress.

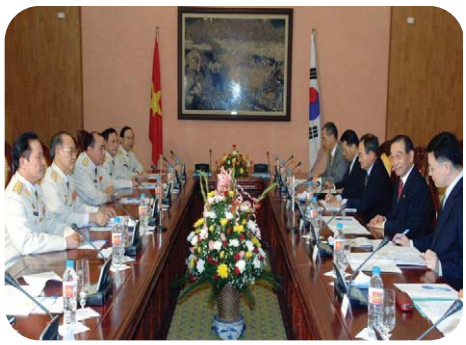
Bilateral military exchange cooperation is being expanded and developed between the two nations. For example, both maritime joint search/rescue and counterterror exercises are being conducted in parallel with reciprocal visits of the two nations' vessels.

Such a military relation between the ROK-Russia will continue to contribute to the realization of a peace settlement on the Korean Peninsula and regional peace and stability in Northeast Asia.

2. Relations with Off-Region

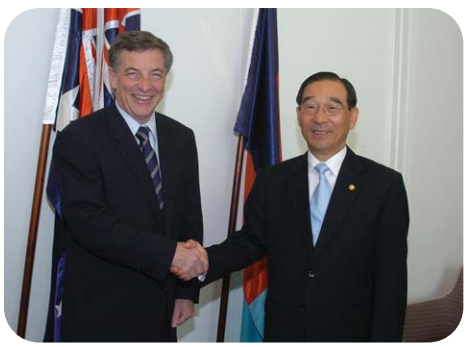
A. Southeast Asia and Oceania

Southeast Asia is increasingly emerging as an important area because ASEAN-centered stable security structure continues to be maintained in the post Cold War. In particular, the need for military exchanges and cooperation becomes greater day by day as the need for the safety of sea lanes of communication, such as the Straits of Malacca, becomes significant, and the possibility for cooperation in the defense industry is gradually increasing.



▲ ROK-Vietnam Defense Ministers Talks

Thus, the ROK military pushes ahead with military exchanges and cooperation with South East Asian countries focusing on military leaders' exchanges, intelligence exchange conferences, and defense industry and logistics joint committee. In addition, there are active visits by military leading figures of Indonesia, Thailand and Philippine, and defense university students.



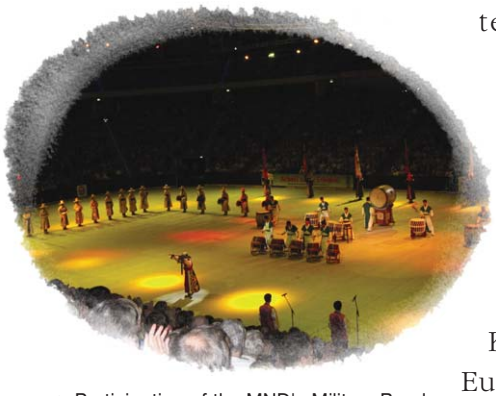
▲ ROK-Australia Defense Ministers Talks

Defense diplomacy in the Oceania is carried out with the focus on Australia and New Zealand. They have common interests with ROK in securing sea lanes of communication, and due to the similarity of major weapon systems to that of Korea, military exchanges and cooperation are in active progress on favorable condition of defense industry cooperation.

In May 2005, the former defense minister, Mr. Yoon Kwang-ung, who visited Australia held a defense ministers meeting. At the meeting, the ROK MND discussed mutual security affairs of interest and measures to improve the exchanges with Australia and New Zealand through defense policy working group meetings held every year. They are currently engaged in various military exchange activities including exchange visits of naval vessels and defense university graduates, and the exchange of military education.

B. Europe

Military diplomacy moves ahead, aiming at the development of an advanced military doctrine and technology through military exchanges activities, and improvement of defense industry exports, through reciprocal exchange of military science technologies.



▲ Participation of the MND's Military Band in the Event of "2005 Korean Year"

To consolidate ties with nations that participated in the Korean War, the ROK has paid close attention to and provided support to invite Korean War veterans to Korea, erect monuments commemorating European participation in the war, and provide for exchanges among generations who have never experienced the war.

Among recent activities involving major military exchanges, the ROK defense minister's visit to Turkey in September 2005, and the Turkish defense minister's visit to Korea in July 2006, provided momentum in promoting mutual military exchange/cooperation and friendly relations.

Among regular bilateral consultations with European nations are the joint defense policy working-level meetings, joint defence industry and logistics committee meetings, and intelligence exchange meetings. With a focus on defense industrial cooperation, the ROK is increasing the number of countries with which it engages in mutual exchanges.

Concerning military education exchanges, ROK military officers are being trained at military educational institutes of six countries including Germany, Greece, and Sweden. In return, military officers from Turkey and France are being trained at ROK military training institutes. The above cases indicate brisk exchanges of military education.

C. Southwest Asia and Middle East

ROK military exchanges with countries in the Southwest Asian region have been developed with a focus on India, Pakistan, and

Bangladesh. Specifically, it makes vital exchanges with them by exchange visits of defense university students, dispatch for officer's education, and reciprocal visits of cruise fleets.

Regarding military relations with Middle East countries, the significance of their strategic value is increasing in terms of energy security. Furthermore, the MND is expanding the cooperation of reciprocal military exchanges including an establishment of mutual defense attache's office, defense industry exports, and technological cooperation as friendly circumstances created by the dispatch of Korean troops to Iraq and the need for military exchanges is incremented.

▲ ROK JCS Chairman's courtesy call on UAE Chief of General Staff

In particular, the MND is strengthening military exchange and cooperation with Middle Eastern countries through its conclusion of SOFA agreements to send liaison officers to units subject to US Central Command stationed in Qatar in February 2006, and its conclusion of defense cooperation agreement with UAE in December as well.

D. Other Regions

The MND consults closely with Canada on national defense issues through regular defense policy working-level meetings, and further promotes friendly military relations bilaterally through exchanges such as naval combined training and mutual visits of naval vessels.

▲ Vice Defense Minister, signing a ROK-Brazil Defense Cooperation Agreement

As the Central American region has been expanding rapidly since the conclusion of free trade agreements, it is expected that military exchanges with these regional countries involving defense industry cooperation and military education exchanges will continue increasing. The vice-defense minister's visit to Guatemala in March 2006, paved the way for facilitating defense industry cooperation. Particularly, in relation with Brazil, there was a positive outcome which involved the conclusion of defense cooperation agreements. These are expected to contribute to a future-oriented defense industry and logistics cooperation with Central American countries.

Concerning the Central Asian region, economic exchange

cooperation between the ROK and CIS nations has been rapidly increasing since the ROK president's visit to Kazakhstan in September 2004, to Azerbaijan in May 2006, and the Prime Minister's visit to Ukraine in 2005. In line with these activities, there have been many developments in defense diplomatic spheres such as the setting up of systems to promote military exchange and cooperation encompassing the ROK military's support in founding the Kazakhstan navy in 2005, military leaders' reciprocal visits, and the conclusion of the "MOU on exchange cooperation of military education between ROK-Kazakhstan."

MOU:
Memorandum of Understanding

Hereafter, military relations between Korea and CIS nations will focus on the comprehensive security cooperation in combination with securing energy resources, diplomacy for economic cooperation, and creating circumstances for defense industry cooperation.

Although military exchanges with the African region are yet to be activated, mutual exchanges need to be developed as Africa's role in the international stage will be greater in the future taking into account its potential as it makes up around one fourth of the world's countries in number.

3. International Peace Activities

A. UN Peacekeeping Operations (PKO)

PKO:
Peace-Keeping Operations

UNTSO:
UN Truce Supervision Organization Observers

The UN PKO started with the UNTSO in 1948, to resolve interstate conflicts peacefully with the creation of the UN after the second World War.

As the pattern of regional conflicts has changed to domestic conflicts and internal wars since the 1990s in the post Cold War, the recent PKO are being broadened not only to include surveillance activities in the conflict region, but also to bring resolution to the conflict (peace enforcement) or reconstruction activities after the conflict settlement. As the conduct of complex missions requiring the participation of the military, police, and civic sectors is demanded, the type of participation is divided into several groups who can fulfill missions, such as the surveillance group, the peacekeeping forces, and the combined PKO.

UNPKF under ongoing activities (as of Nov. 2006):
- Under participation of 112 UN member states
- 18 areas such as Sudan and

Lebanon:
- 82 thousands personnel
- Some 5 billion dollars in operation per year

(1) ROK Mlilitary's PKO

☞ Refer to Appendix 8 "Status of the UN PKO."

The ROK joined as one of the UN member states, and performed an exemplary PKO when a detachment of construction engineering corps was sent to Somalia in July 1993 (UNOSOM-II) which was suffering from starvation due to armed conflicts and drought.

UNOSOM-II: United Nations Operation in Somalia

Also the Field engineering corps with more than 160 persons were sent to Angola from October 1995 to February 1997, and a battalion size infantry unit was dispatched to East Timor from October 1999 to October 2003. Those operations contributed to human rights protection and peace settlement in support of community reconstruction and the recovery of public peace and order.

▲Medical support unit's completion of the mission in the Western Sahara (May 17, 2006)

Furthermore, the ROK military medical support group was dispatched to the Western Sahara and rotated its mission with a Malaysian unit. It then was pulled out after executing its final mission of the 23th dispatch contingent unit on 17 May 2006. It carried out anti-epidemic support and activities aimed at preventing infectious diseases in local people on the basis of a medical support mission to all the PKO members for more than 10 years from September 1994.

Meanwhile, since the ROK armed forces dispatched the UNMOGIP to India/Pakistan in 1994, it has carried out missions such as armistice monitoring, patrol, inspection and mediation by dispatching 30 field-grade officers to Georgia, Liberia, Burundi, Sudan and Afghanistan as military observers.

Conducting the mission of PKO participation successfully several times thus far, the ROK military has contributed greatly to enhancing its national image and national prestige in recognition of being the most exemplary country amongst the nations participating under the UN flag. Aggressive and active humanitarian relief activities and local rehabilitation activities provided a decisive momentum in conveying a friendly image through Korean's self-sacrificing attitude to the local people.

The above activities contributed to increasing Korea's national prestige and helping Korea be elected as a non-permanent member of the UNSC. These also became stepping stones for displaying

Korea's diplomatic capability in a variety of international political arenas, such as assuming high-ranking posts including the UN Secretary General (UNSG) and Special Representative of the UNSG.

(2) Expansion of PKO Participation

The fundamental purpose of the UNPKO, regarding regional conflicts and the violation of basic human rights like the right to life which they suggested as main challenge to human co-prosperity, is to embody perpetual world peace by peaceful resolutions through unified responses.

Particularly, in consideration of the reality of inter-Korean military tension yet to be resolved fundamentally, the ROK is able to build up its image as a peace loving country and set up a foundation for securing support from the international community with respect to issues of the Korean Peninsula by means of its extended participation in the international PKO. In addition, Korea can make use of this image as a foundation for consolidating diplomatic capacity in the international political stage, for example, the UN.

The MND has adopted institutional measures to expand Korea's international PKO participation as part of the "National Defense Reform 2020" and is actively pressing ahead with these measures. From 2007, to secure a more aggressive and active international PKO participation as a nation producing the UN Secretary General, the MND supports overall activities covering civil, government, and military, and also sets up policy direction to diversify the region participated. With its detailed performance task, it moves ahead with the upgrade of "UN Stand-by Arrangements System," the formation of PKO standing army and the creation of the national level PKO center.

The UN Stand-by Arrangements System, as a system to facilitate and expedite the deployment of member states engaging in the PKO, categorizes the level of participation into 3 stages: the first stage is to notify the "unit scale" capable of PKO participation to the UN and the second one is to hand in "detailed planning data" over PKO participation units. The third is to conclude MOU with UN.

Despite participating in the Stand-by Arrangements System, the MND is not to accept it automatically but to be able to decide whether it will dispatch troops independently. Prompt power

projection to the conflict area and immediate response through preliminary training are to become critical factors for the success or failure of the mission assigned. Hence, the timely participation in an emergency situation, with "preparation of an appropriate scale of a PKO stand-by unit" would be able to maximize participation impact.

Furthermore, the MND is under active review regarding a plan to "found a state-level PKO center" in charge of policy study for PKO and comprehensive education covering civil, government, and military. Hereafter, establishing a state-level integrated educational system through the foundation/operation of the above center, the MND expects to maintain the consistency in its relevant policies and PKO operational systems.

B. International PKO through MNF (Multi-National Forces)

PKF: Peacekeeping Forces

MNF: Multi-National Forces

With the September 11 attacks in 2001, the international community has come to regard indiscriminate international terrorism as a common enemy of mankind, and regards it as a pressing issue which should be resolved multilaterally.

Facing new challenges such as international terrorism, the PKO in the international community is expanding from a type of PKF which previously conducted activities to conform to direct UN command/supervision to a type of regional security organization such as NATO or MNF led by a specific country. In particular, in the course of carrying out the war on terror after September 11, the US considers international terrorism to be the biggest enemy against world peace and human security, and it plays a significant role in building up counter-terrorism coalitions in the international society.

With the approval of the national assembly, the ROK government dispatched Korean troops to Afghanistan and Iraq to participate in the counter-terrorism international coalition, for the sake of world peace and human safety, and to contribute to the stability of post-war peace stability in Afghanistan and Iraq.

☞ Refer to Appendix 9 "Status of the Dispatch of ROK Troops"

(1) Dongeui and Dasan Units' Dispatch to Afghanistan

To contribute to world peace and stability by participating in international coalition which supports humanitarian relief, medical

treatment activities, and peace reconstruction pursuant to UNSC 1368/1373, the ROK government dispatched several naval/air force transportation units. Domestic enactment procedures included the approval of the national assembly (September 2001) and the dispatch of ROK medical support units (Dongeui unit) in February, and a construction engineering unit (Dasan unit) in February in 2003.

The ROK medical support unit, consisting of more than 60 persons (more than 670 persons per year) at present, is conducting medical support and anti-infectious disease activities for the coalition forces and local residents based on Korea's excellent medical technology. The construction engineering support unit, comprising more than 150 persons (more than 1,030 persons per year), is performing a variety of missions such as construction/civil engineering work, ROK-US combined PRT support, and support for the people.

PRT (Provincial/Regional Reconstruction Team): Multinational consolidated civil affairs team that the US DOS takes initiative for and is organized so as to support the governance of the Iraqi local government and economic development. It plays a key role is the civilian-led rule of law from military-led security maintenance, the development of local government's capabilities, reconstruction and economic field.

Reforming their mission in an exemplary manner and conducting activities for civil affairs, on the basis of friendship with the local community, including humanitarian level of relief, medical treatment activities and construction support activities. As well as operating Taekwondo (Korean martial art) and Korean language (Hangeul) classes, the Dongeui/Dasan units are highly appreciated by coalition forces and local residents.

(2) Seohee/Jema Units' Dispatch to Iraq

Since the US-led coalition countries began to take military action against Iraq in March 2003, the ROK government has convened an ad hoc cabinet meeting on March 21 and made a decision to detach Korean troops. This decision was also made also in consideration of the international attitude toward the war against Iraq and the significance of the ROK-US alliance.

The National Assembly passed a resolution in favor of dispatching Korean forces. It focused on dispatching one battalion (less than 600 persons) of construction engineering support corps and a medical support unit of less than 100 persons from April 2, 2003. Consequently, the MND dispatched 200 persons from the construction engineering support unit (Soehee unit) and 90 persons of medical support unit (Jema unit) to Nasiriya in Iraq April 30, 2003.

For more than one year until August 31, 2004, the Soehee and Jema units actively supported the coalition force's base operation, the humanitarian level of post-war rehabilitation support and the medical support activities for local people.

These units, in addition to supporting 46 cases of post-rehabilitation work, including new construction of hospitals and schools and water-supply facilities/sewage constructions, executed humanitarian support projects. They also donated medical devices, medicines, wheelchairs, erected an IT center, and performed scholarship activities as well as giving medical treatments for approximately 15 thousand patients. Such devoted activities of the Soehee and Jema units contributed not only to the Iraqi peace settlement but to laying the grounds for the activities of the peace reconstruction division and enhanced Korea's national prestige.

(3) Peace/Reconstruction Support Unit's Dispatch to Iraq

The US, after declaring the end of the Iraqi war on May 1, 2003, requested an additional dispatch of Korean forces to Iraq on September 4, the same year.

In this context, the ROK government announced a plan for an additional dispatch on October 18, 2003, and concluded the plan on December 17 through deliberate discussion. The dispatch focused on providing support for peace and reconstruction and it was independently in charge of a specific area with less than 3,000 troops.

With the approval of the 245th National Assembly on February 13, 2004, the MND organized the Zaytoon unit comprising of more than 3,600 elite troops involving Sohee and Jema units as Iraqi peace/reconstruction support units. Thereafter, it was decided that they would be dispatched in Arbil after close consultation between the ROK and US and several field investigations. It terminated deployment in July 2004, with the 1st echelon of 3,566 soldiers in total, taking advantage of airforce, maritime and ground transport.

▲ Ground maneuver of Zaytoon Unit in the desert area

▲ Tactical discussion on "Pabalma Operation"

▲ Tug-of-war for reconciliation

The Iraqi Zaytoon unit, involving the detachment of more than 13,800 persons per year from September 2004 to present, achieved outcome bryond expectation at home and abroad based on the concern of the entire nation and government-wide policy support.

On the basis of the fame/praise which Korean forces received in East Timor, Angola, Afghanistan, and Somalia, the ROK government has paved the way for realizing national strategy in the Middle East region. The ROK-US alliance, far more solidified by the dispatch to Iraq, provides an opportunity for the ROK government to take the initiative in driving foreign policy.

The unit also gave medical support to alienated residents who did not receive medical benefit by treating more than 100 patients per day when Zaytoon hospital opened November 27, 2004. In addition, in support of their hearts' desire project like installation of common community facilities through multi-functional Green Angel Operations, the unit contributed to gaining public sentiment of local people and forming friendly relationships. In addition, the unit holds an invitation event to Korea and regular exchange events for KRG's key persons.

Green Angels Operations: Zaytoon unit's core activities having the purpose of enhancing life quality of and friendship with local residents in Iraqi Irbil. The unit conducts reconstruction activities centering around village's heart's desire project such as civil support, public relations to local community, support for medical treatment in organization of TF teams in medical treatment, engineering and maintenance areas.

KRG: Kurdistan Regional Government

In the mean time, with respect to support for public peace maintenance activities, the unit reinforced capabilities of local police to secure peace and order by providing tremendous equipment and materials such as police devices, vehicles, criminal equipment, facility security equipments and demining equipments. Moreover, it helped maintain public peace and order to assist in new building, reconstruction and repair of public peace related facilities, such as construction of more than 100 checkpoints, including a check point outside airport.

The activities to promote self-reliance and to lay the foundation of social and economic development focusing on capability development of local residents are considered to be the best examples in Zaytoon unit's activities. The demonstration project for the New Village (Saemaeul) movement and Zaytoon technical

training center are representative examples.

First of all, the demonstration projects, a project to encourage the self-reliance and self-help of local residents, involving the provision of books related to the New Village movement which are translated in Kurdish, opening the Saemaeul training institute in March 2005, reconstruction of the village hall, and environmental improvement projects like landscape architecture for the village park. The unit is maximizing the outcome of the Saemaeul movement through village based implementation of sisterhood relationships with each battalion

▲ Education for vehicle maintenance

▲ Education for computer

▶ Education for comfectionery & bakery

sized unit and support for self-help projects.

The Zaytoon technical training center opened to promote the self-reliance capability of the local people educates them every two months on specialized techniques covering vehicle maintenance, agricultural machinery, home electrical goods repair, baking techniques, computer education, and special vehicles and heavy equipment driving instruction. The unit also gains the confidence of local residents by assuring more than 80% employment to the people who complete the education courses in consultation with the Kurdish local government.

▲ We are Friends !

Every individual in the Zaytoon unit contributes greatly to enhance Korean and ROK force's humanitarian standing in the international community on the basis of a lucid sense of mission and self-esteem. The humanitarian support activities of the unit, have been evaluated as being of the most exemplary standard and have won the reputation that they demonstrate a "model of civil affairs operations." In addition, the unit is recognized as a member of the local community by the local people, since it maintains close cooperative relations with the Kurdish local government and takes the lead in local reconstruction. The president of the Kurdish local government has mentioned that "we had no friend except mountain so far but now we have come to call Koreans our friends."

4. Multilateral Security Cooperation and International Disarmament Activities

A. Multilateral Security Cooperation

Today, with problems of unconventional and transnational issues such as terrorism, drugs and the environment as well as conventional security issues such as territory, races and religion have been unveiled, the significance of multilateral security cooperation is increasing.

Multilateral security cooperation seeks to resolve through dialogue and cooperation on a multilateral basis, pending regional issues in the areas of politics, diplomacy, economy, society and culture as well as a variety of security issues that could develop into regional conflicts. It further strives for prevention and peaceful resolution of the conflict. Taking into account such characteristics, multilateral security cooperation is greatly needed in the Northeast Asian region Where the Cold War structure still exists.

Though multilateral security cooperation functions to enable pan-regional countries to respond to transnational security issues, there are limitations in resolving security issues due to delay in

decision making process and non-binding implementation of the agreements. As such, the multilateral process has practical limitations in resolving structural security problems in Northeast Asia.

Thus, the multilateral security cooperation in Northeast Asia encounters difficulties. Accordingly, the ROK government will continue to make every effort to complement bilaterally cooperative relations to improve security environments on the Korean Peninsula as well as in this region, and to lay the foundation of establishing a multilateral cooperative body in Northeast Asia.

In Particular, the government expects the Six Party talks to resolve North Korea's nuclear problem and successfully progress toward a multilateral cooperative body in Northeast Asia.

Meanwhile, the ROK government is taking an active part in multilateral security cooperation in the region to promote mutual understanding and cooperation among Asian-Pacific countries, and further, to settle the stability and peace on the Korean Peninsula.

The multilateral conference venue in the Asia-Pacific that the ROK participates in, is ARF, which is intergovernmental conference, while the nongovernmental conferences that Koreans participate in are ASC, NEACD, CSCAP, and LNWFZ-NEA.

The conference bodies within ARF that the MND participates in actively are the DOD established permanently in 2003 and the SPC, launched in 2004, where senior defence officials take part.

The MND, which detaches a delegation to the ARF every year, promulgates the government's formal position regarding the Korean Peninsula and regional security issues, and provides public relations for the government's activities and efforts for international security, such as the Korean force's peace/reconstruction activities in Iraq. Also, by introducing consistent government policy, that is, a peaceful resolution of North Korea's nuclear issue through the Six Party talks, the MND has continued to make efforts for a prompt resolution of North Korea's nuclear problem and a peaceful settlement for the Korean peninsula.

The ARF is trying to push ahead with development toward concrete cooperative relations in the areas of disaster relief, maritime security, and PKO on the basis of the

ARF:
ASEAN Regional Forum

ASC:
Asia Security Conference

NEACD:
Northeast Asia Cooperation Dialogue

CSCAP:
Council for Security Cooperation in the Asia-Pacific Region

LNWFZ-NEA:
Limited Nuclear Weapon Free Zone for Northeast Asia

DOD:
Defense Officials' Dialogue

SPC:
Security Policy Conference

▲ Address in the 5th Asia Security Conferance (June 2006)

outcome accomplished so far. Thus, related agencies and departments need to take special concerns and make preparations regarding discussion issues in each area and development trends.

In April 2006, the 17th NEACD was held, in Tokyo, Japan, with the longest and most vigorous activities among nongovernmental dialogue bodies in Northeast Asia. This meeting provided all delegations of the Six Party Talks with the venue for dialogue in which North Korea's nuclear issue could be discussed, instead of the Six Party talks under stalemate. Thereby, it gained global attention and confirmed its usefulness.

The MND, dispatching a delegation to the "Defense Intelligence Sharing Conference," prepared momentum not only to introduce the government's defense policy and defense reform but also to improve military transparency of the ROK.

The former defense minister, Yoon Kwang-ung, participated, for the second time, in the "Asia Security Meeting" held in Singapore in June 2006 subsequent to 2005. In a speech in the meeting, entitled the "Participation of Military Power for International Security," he introduced the ROK force's peace keeping activities and the effort to upgrade the level of Korea's participation in the "UN Stand-by Arrangements System" from the current 1st stage to the 3rd stage, and proposed to seriously review the measures to respond substantially and effectively to international scale of disaster.

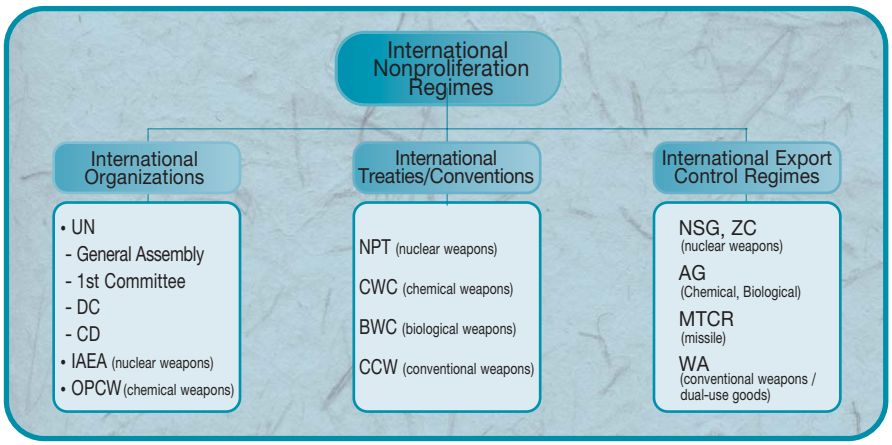
B. International Disarmament Activities

Currently, the international community regards the proliferation of nuclear, chemical and biological weapons, and its delivery means, missiles, as serious threats against world peace and stability, and seeks close cooperation to prevent proliferation of these weapons.

The ROK has been promoting international disarmament and nonproliferation activities more actively since joining the UN in 1991. The ROK, through implementing its duty cordially as a member state of relevant international regimes and taking positive actions on behalf of the international disarmament and nonproliferation regimes, contributes to international peace and

paves the way for acquiring the support of the international community and positive assistance in an emergency. The representative organizations and treaties/conventions are shown in Table 4-6.

〈Table 4-6〉 International Non-proliferation Regimes



The ROK tries to promote inter-Korean military confidence and stability by inducing North Korea's participation in such international activities and thereby endeavors to lay the foundation of peaceful unification.

The ROK military pursues to uplift related special capabilities with active participation in arms control-related education, research and intelligence exchange activities, and to contribute to activating defense industry as well as upgrading military technology standard in acquisition of expertise and experiences. It also contributes to the prevention of chemical weapons proliferation in successful superintendency and performance of the "international education for chemical protection" limited to Asian circle at the request of OPCW since 2005. The education on chemical protection and response systems conducted in 2006 to 22 persons coming from 16 nations, strengthens ROK government's efforts for the cooperation of Asian countries in relevant areas and increases publicity activities on excellence of integrated defense systems.

Regarding CWC, 181 nations as of now, joined CWC by the efforts of securing universality, adopted on the basis of

Education for Chemical Protection
- Outline
  - To conduct annually since 2005
  - Object : personnel in charge of combating chemical terrorism in Asian countries
  - Host : OPCW and ROK NBC Defense Command
- Major Contents
  - Mission and role of OPCW
  - Establishment of response systems to chemical weapons terrorism
  - Detection, protection, kinds of decontamination materials and methods of their use

UNDC:
UN Disarmament Committee

CD:
Conference on Disarmament

IAEA:
International Atomic Energy Agency

OPCW:
Organization for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons

NPT:
Nuclear non-Proliferation Treaty

CWC:
Chemical Weapon Convention

BWC:
Biological Weapon Convention

CCW :
Convention on Certain Conventional Weapons

NSG:
Nuclear Supplier Group

ZC:
Zangger Committee

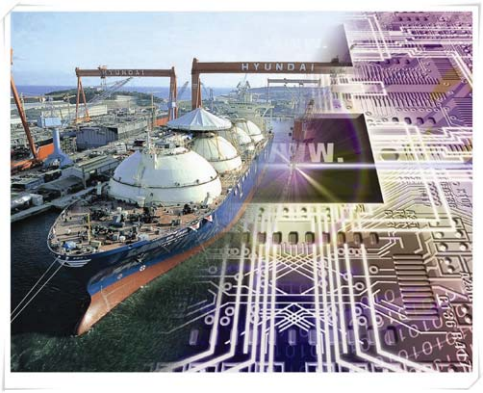
AG:
Australia Group

MTCR:
Missile Technology Control Regime

WA:
Wassenaar Arrangement

ROK government's initiative. The government is concerned about 14 non-member states like North Korea. Being reelected as a member of the executive board in the 11th meeting of the states parties in 2006, the ROK reconfirms its position in the Asian region.

The ROK delegation, proposing the measures to secure universality in the 2nd Review Conference in 2006, led member states to urge non-member states' participation and early implementation of the convention.



▲ Export control of strategic materials

Sharing the necessary information between the related ministries within the government and maintaining consistency of policy in the activation of consultation meetings relevant to export control of the strategic materials from 2002, the government prevents and actively intercepts on a government-wide level, defense industry materials and dual-use items transferred to terrorists and states of concern. In addition, the government actively cooperates with the UN within the scope of maintaining stability on the Korean Peninsula after the adoption of the UNSC resolution 1695/1718, which requests control of the transfer of WMD-related materials and fund to North Korea in response to North Korea's missile test firing in July and nuclear test in October 2006.

Thus, the MND is in the middle of stepping up its international influence in the areas of international disarmament and nonproliferation, by securing transparency and enhancing international reliability regarding WMD through broad international disarmament and nonproliferation activities.

Section 4. Mitigation of Inter-Korean Military Tension

The ROK military has continued to make efforts to strengthen the perception that both the mitigation of inter-Korean military tension and the mutual confidence building for peace on the Korean peninsula based on the government's "peace and prosperity policy" are more important than anything else.

In particular, through a series of South-North military talks, the MND has, in priority, pushed ahead with measures to mitigate the tension in and around the West Sea and the MDL which have been areas of significant tension.

Meanwhile, by supporting/assuring inter-Korean exchange/cooperation projects carried out through the MDL and NLL militarily, the MND has made use of it as a catalyst for reducing inter-Korean military tension.

As a consequence, it is recognized that they contributed, more or less, to mitigating military tension in and around MDL, a symbol of inter-Korean confrontation.

MDL (Military Demarcation Line):
Military border line which divides the area under the control of the UNC commander and the area under control of North Korea's commander. the MDL starts from the northern bank of the river Imjingang with MDL No. ooo1 and continues to the East Sea district with MDL No. 1292

NLL (Northern Limit Line):
It is a line the UNC commander established in Aug. 1953 to restrict patrol activities of the ROK Airforce in conjunction with the purpose of reducing the possibility of an occurrence of and preventing accidental armed clashes between the South and North, the NLL was established on the criteria of the prolonged line of the MDL toward the East Sea and an intermediate line between 5 islands in the northwest and North Korean area toward the West Sea.

1. Mitigation of Military Tension on the West Sea

The elevation of military tension on the West Sea resulted from the so-called "West Sea Clash" where North Korean naval vessels invaded the NLL forty-three times deliberately from October to November 1973. Since then, the "West Sea engagement" on June 29, 2002, following the "Yeonpyung Naval Battle," where a naval skirmish took place between South-North navies on June 15, 1999, resulted in cooling down an atmosphere of inter-Korean reconciliation/cooperation that had been created since the "June 15 ROK-DPRK Joint Declaration."

▲ The Chamsuri 357 that engaged in the West Sea naval campaign

Under these circumstances, the government deemed the measures for mitigating tension in the West Sea to be urgent. It activated the first round of inter-Korean General-level

▲ 1st Round of the inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks(May 2004)

military talks in May 2004, and then adopted the "Agreement on the Prevention of Accidental Naval Clashes in the West Sea, and the Cessation of Propaganda Activities, the Elimination of Propaganda Apparatus in the Military Demarcation Line Areas (hereafter 6/4 agreement)," and "Its Annex" in the second inter-Korean General-level talks and working-level delegation meetings.

As measures to prevent accidental armed clashes in the West Sea, the two sides agreed to establish emergency liaison systems in the "6/4 agreement" : ① use/communication of an international common network for commercial vessels; ② establishment/use of visual signal (signal lights and flags) provisions; ③ intelligence sharing regarding illicit fishing boats of a third country; and ④ installation of a communication liaison office in the West Sea.

In particular, the mutual communications utilizing subsidiary means like international common network for commercial vessels and visual signals (e.g., signal lights and flags), prevented mutual confrontation and occurrence of misunderstanding caused by missing sea routes and shipwreck relief. It also reduced the possibility of the occurrence of accidental clashes. It is further recognized that such communications contribute to mitigating military tension in the West Sea.

The two sides, sharing the view that accidental skirmishes could take place in the process of controlling a third-countries' fishing boats, which made illegal fishing in the sensitive waters of the West Sea, agreed to exchange the daily information as to illicit fishing vessels. The fact that they have implemented it faithfully so far since June 15, 2004, helps to build confidence in the program, even though it might be merely rudimentary.

In conjunction with that, the communication liaison office installed in the West Sea as of August 13, 2005 provided the channel for direct communication with each other in use of wire/wireless means between inter-Korean naval authorities. It now can prevent the possibility for the occurrence of accidental clashes in the West Sea and plays the role of liaison system capable

of preventing the escalation in the event of clashes.

Since mutual communication rates below expectation in spite of a series of such measures, the need to improve prevention measures concerning accidental skirmishes in the West Sea was raised. Thus, the government has been pressing ahead with consultations with North Korea as well as seeking ways to establish inter-Korean joint fishing waters, and create maritime cooperation.

As result of these efforts, "the third inter-Korean General-level military talks" were held in the "Tongilgak (Unification Pavilion)" within Panmunjeom from 2 to 3 March 2006. In this meeting, the ROK delegation urged the North Korean delegation to agree to consultation for peaceful settlements in the West Sea, bringing forward the issue regarding the "Prevention of Armed Clashes in the West Sea and Establishment of Joint Fishing Waters." However, the delegation from North Korea maintained that the two sides should consult on the NLL in the West Sea, in advance, in order to sort out the risk of clashes in the West Sea fundamentally. Therefore, the two sides terminated the talks without agreement.

▲ 4th Round of the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks (May 2006)

"The forth inter-Korean General-level Military Talks" (May 16-18, 2006, "The House of Peace," Panmunjeom) resumed after more than two months, North Korea avoided discussions about substantive mitigation of tension while reiterating the past position that North Korea should, first of all, deal with matters to fix the NLL. In this context, regarding "insistence on the negotiation of NLL issue first" proposed by North Korea, the ROK delegation expressed the view that it had intention to be able to discuss it in the "Defense Ministerial Talks" on the premise of implementing (1) the principle which was to respect/observe existing waters the South and North had exercised jurisdiction over as having been agreed in the 1992 Inter-Korean Basic Agreement, and (2) military items agreed in the Basic Agreement, in the midst of the North's negative reaction.

In the future, the ROK government will continue to move on with bilateral consultation with the North for peace settlement in the West Sea while faithfully implementing measures to prevent accidental clashes pursuant to the "June 4 agreement." Concerning

the attempt to inactivate the NLL by North Korea, the government will keep the NLL resolutely as the MDL until the new NLL is determined, since the NLL is a firm maritime demarcation line which has been maintained for the past 50 years. The ROK will continue taking a firm stance over the existing position that is to respond determinedly to North Korea's invasion.

2. Mitigation of Military Tension Around MDL

A. Military Assurance of a Passage Through the South-North Administration Area

▲ The 1st round of the inter-Korean Defense Ministers Talks

The ROK military has made efforts for military support and assurance of inter-Korean exchange/cooperation, and to make those activities result in the mitigation of tension in the military area. As a result, the 1st round of the inter-Korean Defense Ministers Talks was held in September 2000. The two sides agreed to hold working-level meeting to support the inter-Korean railway and road connection projects in conjunction with military support for exchange and cooperation.

In particular, after the adoption of the "Agreement on Military Assurances for Designation of the Joint Administration Area in the East and West Coastal districts, and the Construction of Railways and Roads Connecting the South and North" (hereafter refered to as the Military Assurance Agreement) in the 7th inter-Korean military working-level meeting held in September 2002, the inter-Korean Joint Administration Area was designated with a partial opening of the DMZ near the Kyungeui and Donghae lines. In addition, the construction works to connect railways and roads nearly reaching the last stages as of December 2006. Thus, Gaesung industrial complex project and overland tour came to be possible. More than 20 meetings were, thereafter, held between inter-Korean military authorities to consult military assurance issues of the railways/roads connection works and the passing. Exchanges of direct communication and various documents

took place everyday between the South and North Korean military servicemen, by installation of telephone and fax machine with one circuit respectively, in military situation rooms located in Kyungeui and Donghae lines. In the process of transferring personnel and materials through the railways and roads, a momentum has been created that the DMZ, formerly the actual site of inter-Korean confrontation, is now able to be utilized peacefully.

B. Suspension of Propaganda Activity and Implementation of Agreement on the Elimination of Propaganda Means

The aforementioned the "June 4 Agreement" involves agreements with regard to the suspension of propaganda activities around the MDL and the elimination of propaganda means in conjunction with an agreement related to the prevention of accidental clashes in the West Sea.

This agreement focuses on (1) the suspension of propaganda activities from June 15, 2004; (2) the elimination of propaganda means around the MDL with 3 steps until August 15, 2004; and (3) the reinstallation of propaganda means and prohibition of resuming propaganda activities. Owing to this agreement, the Inter-Korean propaganda war avtivities which used to be labelled as war without bullet were suspended and there means were eliminated, resulting in making opportunity to support the ROK government reconciliation and cooperation policy.

▲ A scene to put troops/ equipment for demining

3. Military Support for inter-Korean Exchange and Cooperation

Considering that the majority of inter-Korean exchange and cooperation projects continue passing through land, sea and air routes within the military area involving the MDL and NLL, the ROK military supports it through the evaluation of its military impact.

The volume of inter-Korean passage after January 2004 is

indicated in Table 4-8. In the case of a volume of inter-Korean passage by land (through the MDL, based on one way), the level of more than 600 times in 2003 after the completion of provisional roads on the Kyungeui and Donghae lines in December 2002, rapidly increased to more than 3,200 times in 2004 and 5,000 times in 2005. Along with the construction work of the Gaesung complex, the number of transit persons during that period came to reach approximately two million people. In this context, the military is supporting consultation between the UNC and the North Korean Military, escort and guard in relation to the passage through inter-Korean administration area around Kyungeui and Donghae lines.

▲Loading into North Korean cargo ship

▲ North Korea's Koryo passenger plane

The sea route passages were also averaging the passage of 5 ships per day to transport materials between the South and North before the "Inter-Korean Agreement on Maritime Transport" came into force, and most ships were of a third country's nationality, such as China and Panama. However, 150 North Korean ships in total received the ROK government's approval for maritime transportation as of October 2006, and some 530 ROK vessels per month on average also navigate into North Korean waters.

Accordingly, the ROK military reviews permissions regarding North Korean vessel's sailing in ROK waters and maintains surveillance during sailing and emergency preparedness posture.

Inter-Korean air transport continued to increase in number of transports, after the first running, using provisional direct route over the West Sea between Seoul and Pyongyang at the time of the South-North summit in 2000. On the basis of analyzing harmful factors through the assessment of the military

〈Table 4-8〉 Volume of Inter-Korean visits (Jan. 2004-Oct. 2006)

Classification	By land	By sea	By air
Number of times	over 13,000	over 12,000	over 320
Transportation	over 2 millions	over 18 million tons	over 27 thousands

impact, the ROK military reviews permissions regarding the inter-Korean aircraft transport scheme, and maintains air surveillance and an emergency preparedness posture during the operation

Meanwhile, the ROK military has completed demining and roadbed works in order to connect the inter-Korean railways/roads. It has also carried out work to remove mines buried beneath the power transmission lines in the Gaesung industrial complex at the north of the civilian control line in 2006.

Thus, in the course of executing inter-Korean exchange and cooperation projects, the military continues to make efforts to mitigate inter-Korean military tension and to build confidence by virtue of a variety of consultations and agreements between inter-Korean military authorities and the contacts made in the process of their implementation.

▲ Military support for roadbed construction of the Kyeongeui Line

All the while, North Korea took a positive stance toward military support in regard to exchange and cooperation, while it showed a passive attitude to consultation on pure military issues such as military confidence building measures. Therefore, taking into account the security situation caused by North Korea's nuclear test and the trends of inter-Korean dialogue, the government will endeavor to push for the mitigation of military tension and confidence building to consult and execute the matters of military support for inter-Korean exchange and cooperation, including the aggregate collection project at the estuary of Han River and the joint anti-flood project of the Imjin River, in addition to compliance with the "Agreement on military assurance of the railways and roads passage."

Chapter
5

Establishment of an Advanced Defense Management System

Section 1. Retention and Management of Elite Defense Manpower

Section 2. Reform of Defense Resource Management

Section 3. Efficient Allocation and Execution of Defense Budget

Section 4. Pursuit of Defense Digitization

Section 5. Settlement of a New Barrack Culture

Section 1. Retention and Management of Elite Defense Manpower

Rapid changes in the security environment and the development of high-tech weapons systems require defense manpower with stronger capabilities and various specialties. Securing and managing such defense manpower is the key to successfully exercising combat power.

The MND is improving its defense manpower structure to ensure a civilian-centered decision and promotion of defense policies, as well as to provide an environment for the military to devote itself to combat missions. To accomplish these goals, the MND is implementing a scheme to expand the civilian base, such as adjusting the end-strength of MND headquarters, not to mention increasing the use of civilian personnel. The MND is also promoting policies to strengthen officers' specialties and expend opportunities for self-development.

In addition, the MND formulates and implements a wide array of welfare promotion measures to improve the "quality of life" for service members, with the intent to boost their enthusiasm and morale. In other words, the MND is pursuing a dramatic enhancement of service members' working conditions through the improvement of their salary and allowance system, improvement of barracks facilities and residence conditions, expansion of medical support, and improvement of living conditions of service members' families. At the same time, the MND is seeking to improve job security for military personnel, bolstering measures to support the reemployment of retired military personnel and improve the military pension system.

1. The Establishment of an Advanced Defense Manpower Structure

A. The Strengthening of the Expertise of Public Officials in the MND Headquarters

In the process of combining and arbitrating national security and defense policies, not to mention deciding and promoting them as well, the Minister of National Defense needs to be assisted in the general perspective by those with neutral views and balanced

judgement. For the Minister of National Defense to be supported in that way, the assignment and utilization of civilian experts in the MND staff system is indispensible.

To accomplish this goal, the personnel structure in the MND headquarters has been changed to ensure the civilian-centered construction and promotion of defense policies so that national security and defense policies can be effectively connected. Furthermore, the civilian-centered formation and assignment of positions in the MND headquarters are also done to efficiently manage the military, as well as to secure the environment for the military to devote itself to combat assignments exclusively.

However, the key to this personnel policy lies in not focusing solely on increasing the number of civilians in senior positions in the MND, but on training and properly using civilian experts within defense policy and military management sectors. As such, the MND intends to expand civilian expert officials working in the MND headquarters and assign military officers to required positions in order to transform and develop the personnel structure in which civilian personnel with specialties and active military officers are well harmonized. Considering the organization stability and the deed for civilian experts, etc., the MND plans on increasing the limit of the number of civilian officials in the MND headquarters with each year.

According to this adjusted number limit, 5 positions at the director general level, such as the management director general of legal affairs, the planning director general of personnel planning, the planning director of military installations, the director general of international cooperation, and the management director general of public affairs, have been converted into general official positions between 2005 and 2006. As of June 1, 2006, only 4 positions among 15 director general positions, including the military policy advisor, the director general of policy planning, the director general of mobilization planning, and the director general of logistics management, are occupied by active military officers.

Meanwhile, 10 positions among 68 team leader positions will be converted into civil service positions by 2007, and 114 positions in person-in-charge level, currently occupied by majors or lieutenant colonels, will be converted into civil service positions by 2009.

As civilian official positions are gradually expanded in the MND headquarters, the number of positions occupied by military office

will be reduced by optimal level. The promotion plan for the adjustment of the official number limit in the MND headquarters is shown in Table 5-1.

〈Table 5-1〉 Promotion Plan of the Adjustment of the Official Number Limit in the MND Headquarters

Class of Position	Total	As of June 1, 2006				End of 2009			
		Service Members	%	Public Officials	%	Service Members	%	Public Officials	%
Total	709*	271	38	438	62	206	29	503	71
Director	15	4	27	11	73	4	27	11	73
Leader	68	23	34	45	66	20	29	48	71
Charge	626	244	39	382	61	182	29	444	71

※ Minister, vice minister, above-deputy minister level, policy advisor, below-company officer level, and clerical worker excluded.

B. Expansion of Female Workforce Utilization

▲ Women's defense policy team discussing the directions for service promotion (May 2006)

The MND established the "Women's Defense Policy Team" in order to implement various female-oriented policies on behalf of the government and society. In the past, the MND's policies have focused only on female soldiers. However, through the current team, the opportunity is provided to promote various new policies, intended for all women in the MND including female officials and military civilians.

The current status of the female workforce utilization in the MND is as follows: the ratio of female officials to the total official number limit is about 33%, while the ratio of female military civilians to the total military civilian number limit is about 15%. Both ratios are increasing every year. The status of MND female workforce in 2006 is

〈Table 5-2〉 Status of MND Female Workforce in 2006

(Unit: number of persons)

Classification	Total	Class 4~5	Class 6~7	Below Class 8
Total	4,428	149	1,021	3,258
Public Officials	280	17	93	170
Military Civilians	4,148	132	928	3,088

presented in Table 5-2.

Furthermore, to expand the number of female service members in the ROK Armed Forces continuously, the number of female officers and non-commissioned officers (NCOs) will be increased from 4,000 in 2006 to 11,600 by 2020. At that point, the ratio of female officers to the total officer number limit will be increased from 2.7% to 7%, while the ratio of female non-commissioned officers from 1.7% to 5%. The annual plan for the expansion of the number of women soldiers is presented in Table 5-3.

〈Table 5-3〉 Expansion Plan (Draft) of Service Women by Year

(Unit: number of persons)

Classification	Total	Army	Navy	Air Force
2007	4,967	3,704	453	810
2010	6,340	4,459	719	1,162
2015	8,853	5,983	1,308	1,562
2020	11,606	7,790	1,938	1,878

※ Based on each Service's future force structure plan

To expand the number of female military personnel, each cadet academy assigns 10% of the avalable positions to female applicants, and each Service increases the number of recruitment of female officers candidates graduating from civilian colleges. In addition, each Service plans to recruit more female non-commissioned officers. Thus, in the target year of 2020, the number of female soldiers will have expanded by about 2.8 times compared to that in 2006.

The utilization of female military personnel is based on the principle that "without consideration of gender, all soldiers meeting the requirements for task execution be assigned to any position and perform the same task in the time of either war or peace." However, the assignment of women soldiers to the following units is restricted: regimental or lower level units of ground close combat operation, units of special operation or reconnaissance tasks, and units or positions in which the physical requirements are inappropriate for most female soldiers.

Right now, female armed personnel are performing their tasks successfully in various posts, including policy-related posts, major commanders and staffs, fighter and helicopter pilots, battleship

crews, posts in special areas, and soldiers of overseas troops. The total number of female dispatched troops is 60 as of 2006. In Western Sahara, Afghanistan, and the Zaytun unit, they are doing their best to accomplish assigned tasks in various areas such as combat posts (i.e. platoon commanders, pilots, special unit posts, battleship crews) and technical posts (i.e. weapon maintenance, air defense control).

According to the "Framework Act on Women's Development" (legislated on 2002), the MND has introduced and promoted the "Evaluation System of Gender Influence" as the analytic tool of military policies, planning to carry out this system extensively within each Service.

In addition, for female military personnel to manage military life and family life at the same time, the MND has improved various laws and regulations related to the reinforcement of maternity protection and pregnancy. Furthermore, the MND provides for maternity leave, establishing and operating day-care facilities in accord with military characteristics, not to mention educating military personnel to expand men's consciousness about maternity

◀ With a female platoon leader

▼ Pledging themselves to protect air space

▲ Aiming for the Ocean-going Navy

Invincible Marine Corps ▶

protection. Through such activities, the MND has actively promoted the expansion of service men's gender equality perception and women's development activities.

To enhance the leadership of female military personnel, the leadership program was also designed to command and train female officers within each Service, along with female officials as well as military civilians. The leadership program was cosponsored with the leadership development center in Ewha Woman's University, held in the Korea Military Academy on July 2006. On September 2006, as part of the 56th commemoration events of women soldiers foundation, a networking event was held for all female military personnel to enhance morale.

C. Expansion of Military Civilian Personnel Utilization

Under the military force reduction currently promoted by the MND, military officer positions in higher units (including each service headquarters and combat support units) that may be more efficiently performed by civilian personnel will no longer be filled by achieve military officers.

▲ Networking event of female military personnel (Sep. 6, 2006)

According to this plan, about 26,000 civilian positions in the military in 2006, which is around 3.9% of the current military force, will be increased to 30,000, about 6% of the military force of 2020. At the same time, the personnel management system for civilians in the military will be improved. The appointment system will be improved to secure excellent personnel, while open and contracting positions will be expanded as well.

This expansion of civilian basis in the military is designed as a response to security environment changes around the Korean Peninsula, as well as to actively prepare the basis to accommodate social changes and reforms.

2. Development of Military Human Resources

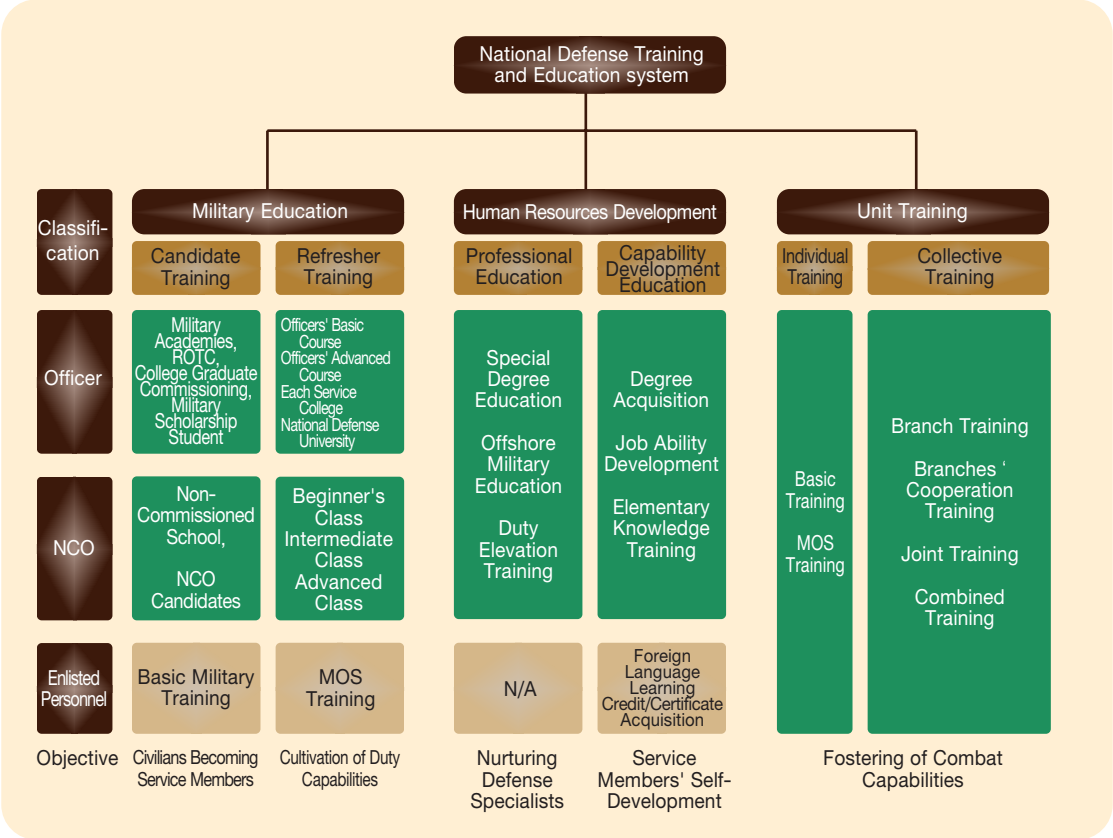
The ROK military has been carrying out various types of educational training to accomplish the goal of "fostering best military members to win against the enemy." Through such

educational training, the foundation of today's military capabilities might be laid. Especially, as weapon systems have become highly advanced and are based on information technology, the MND has recognized that fostering excellent manpower and cultivating military members' potentials are the cores of developing combat strength. Consequently, the following tasks have been promoted actively.

A. Improvement of the Military Educational Training System

In the past, the military educational training system was classified into school education and unit education. But now, it has been classified into military education, human resources development and unit training to foster best military personnel and

〈Figure 5-4〉 Conceptional Diagram of the Military Educational Training System



cultivate their potentials.

Military education is divided into candidate training to train civilians to become service members and refresher training to improve military duty performance. Military educational institutions provide this specialized military educational service. Human resource development is divided into specialty education that fosters the acquisition of specialized skills and supports the self-development of member of the military. Human resource development utilizes various types of education systems, including prominent domestic/offshore educational institutions and e-learning. Unit training, the purpose of which nurtures unit and military members' combat operation capabilities, is divided into individual training and collective training. The conceptual diagram is presented in Figure 5-4.

B. Development of Military Education

The ROK military has steadily made efforts to improve military education so that many changes and developments have been made.

To acquire excellent junior officers and strengthen military infrastructure, the ROK military has improved the system to foster officers, as well as non-commissioned officers under the ROTC system. Especially, as the organization of the ROTC has been authorized in 10 additional universities, the ROK military has prepared the basis to secure elite officers from various regional universities.

Furthermore, to develop the academic system of military science as well as support professional personnel majoring in military science, the degree of military science as a double major has been conferred in military academies, with a master program of military science being provided by the Korea National Defense University. In order to improve the expertise of officials in the MND headquarters, the Korea National Defense University has also established specialist educational programs related to national security policy, procurement, information technology, organization and manpower. To strengthen the education of combined operation capabilities, the ROK military has reviewed the curricula of the Joint Staff College, service colleges, and military academies and is currently setting up a combined educational system.

Especially, through mutual friendship and exchange activities, military academies attempt to enhance understanding of other military departments and expand the consensus.

C. Fostering Manpower with Special Skills

▲ ROK-US military educational exchange council

To nurture field specialists initiating military specialization and digitization, various types of domestic/overseas training and education programs are offered. Degree-based education is intended to foster military personnel who will be utilized at educational institutes and research departments. Every year, over 420 service members are selected for enrollment in master and doctoral programs.

Overseas military education aims at acquiring advanced military knowledge, fostering regional experts, and promoting cooperation with allied countries. The ROK military sends about 400 service members to major countries for study related to security and defense industries. Especially since organizing the military educational exchange council between the ROK and U.S. (March 2003), mutual cooperation has been strengthened by identifying proper curricula, enhancing communication at working level, and both countries' military educational development.

In addition, through an MOU other countries through contract, the ROK military is strengthening cooperation military educational exchange. In 2006, the ROK military discussed military educational exchange cooperation in detail with Kazakhstan and Israel. To reduce the language problems of foreign military trainees, the Korean language course has been established in the Army Intelligence School.

D. Civilian-Military Educational Exchanges

To enhance specialization, openness, and the diversity of military education, exchanges and cooperation with civilian educational institutes has been strengthened. The Korea National

Defense University and each Service have signed exchange agreements with civilian universities and research institutes to invigorate exchange activities, including mutual support of professors, exchange of academic information, joint research projects, and academic conferences.

Notably, according to the promotion of the military human resources development policy, a military educational training evaluation committee has been formed to have military educational training courses acknowledged by the state. This committee maintains a systematically cooperative relationship with the Korea Educational Development Institute, Korea Job Competency Development Institute, Korea University Education Council, and Junior College Association. The ROK military has opened and presently operates branches of civilian colleges (graduate schools) within units to provide a better educational environment for military officers, as well as to improve duty performance policies to promote the development of Military Human Resources.

E. Promotion of the Military Human Resources Development Policies

Soldiers who are attending colleges or have graduated from colleges, comprise 82% of the ROK military servicemen, the highest ratio in the world. The MND promotes military human resources development policies at the governmental level in order to increase combat capabilities as well as contribute to the expansion of the knowledge base of both the nation and society by extensively providing opportunities for self development to soldiers.

The main points of military human resources development policies are as follows.

First, to provide a dynamic educational environment during the duty service period, the MND supports a program to improve soldiers' language abilities in their free time by carrying forward a scheme where soldiers can earn college credit through e-learning based on internet computers installed at all military facilities; of course, these credits earned in military educational training courses are acknowledged by civilian educational institutions.

▲ Servicemen's entrance into an English village

To improve English proficiency, over 1,000 exemplary soldiers have been enrolled in an English

village in 2006. Furthermore, foreign lecturers, U.S. soldiers in the ROK, and language resources in the ROK military have been utilized for that purpose. In addition, 11 ROK Army branch schools have been designated as educational institutes of which credits are acknowledged. Technological schools and signal schools in the Navy and Air Force have also been designated as model schools for credit acknowledgement. Therefore, in the case of technological servicemen, credits earned through military educational programs can be acknowledged as college credits

▲ Self-development learning after daily work

Second, to help soldiers earn college credits during the military duty period as well as provide a learning environment for servicemen's self-development, the MND provides various courses, such as languages, certificates, college lectures, and cultural studies through "e-learning portal for servicemen's self-development," which is connected to cyber knowledge information rooms.

Third, to increase opportunities for military servicemen to get further qualifications, the MND makes efforts to: a) expand the exemption system for national technical qualification examination requirements in terms of the military areas closely connected to society; and b) help service members get national technical qualifications for military techniques and capabilities to be usefully utilized in the private sector.

Through these military human resources development polices, the duty service period can be considered as a period of self-development for soldiers. The status of national technological certificates acquired (1975~2005) is shown in Table 5-5.

〈Table 5-5〉 Status of the National Technical Qualifications Acquired (1975-2005) (Units: number of persons)

Classification	Total	Industrial Engineers	Technicians	Assistant Technicians
1975~1979	35,381	2,313	16,747	16,321
1980~1989	77,683	15,724	49,320	12,639
1990~1999	97,100	12,850	84,250	-
2000~2005	48,988	8,028	40,960	-
Total	259,152	38,915	191,277	28,960

3. Improvement of Advanced Military Welfare and Medical Support System

A. Improvement of Treatment for Service Members

(1) Improvement of the Salary System for Military Personnel

Though the "Military Personnel Remuneration Act" should be applied to salary and allowance systems for military personnel, military personnel are instead subject to the "Government Employee Remuneration Regulations" and "Regulations on Government Employee Allowance." Thus, the unique nature of military service has not been properly taken into account.

▲ Special environment of military service

Considering the unique conditions that military personnel face, including serving in remote and distant areas, frequently moving, having difficulties regarding their children's education, early retirement, and difficulties in finding new jobs, the existing "Military Personnel Remuneration Act" must be revised to reflect reality. Hence, an independent compensation system is going to be applied.

In future, military personnel's salaries will be aimed above the level of standard private companies, and the enactment of the "Enforcement Decree of the Military Personnel Remuneration Act" will be promoted to reflect an appropriate salary increase rate.

Meanwhile, on the basis of a corporal, an enlisted man's monthly salary was increased to 65,000 won in 2006 (which was a raise of 47% in 2006 as compared to 2005) and will be increased to 80,000 won in 2007, so that minimum expenses necessary during the duty service period will be met.

(2) Improvement of the Allowance System for Military Personnel

The MND plans to introduce various allowance systems reflecting the unique working conditions and job specialties, thereby improving the allowance system to ensure equality among individual Services and branches.

In addition, to compensate for extra living expenses incurred under a poor working conditions (i.e. serving in remote and distant areas, a poor educational environment for the children, separation from the family, frequent moving), the MND plans to introduce a family separation allowance, a college student tuition support allowance, a special medical service allowance, and a non-commissioned officer incentive allowance, as well as increase the allowance to a realistic level. At the same time, considering high-risk working incentive, the MND also plans to introduce independent allowances, such as an allowance for special operation in contact areas, an ambush allowance, and an outdoor billeting allowance.

Furthermore, the MND promotes tax exemption for allowances in order to preserve household budgets (family allowance, residence allowance, tuition support allowance). Regarding the period of military education, only 50% of the education period is reflected in the salary class. However, the MND's goal is to fully reflect this period in the salary class.

▲ Meal Improvement

(3) Improvement of Food and Clothing for Military Members

Not only to meet the divergent

tastes of a new generation of soldiers but also to provide soldiers with a nutritious diet by focusing on "quality" rather than "quantity," the ROK military promotes an increase of basic food expenses as shown in Table 5-6. It plans to increase food expenses to become 90% of civilian meal expenses by 2011.

〈Table 5-6〉 Basic Food Expenses for Enlisted Men

(Unit: won per person/day)

Classification	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Military (Ratio to Civilian)	4,805 (82%)	5,000 (83%)	5,240 (85%)	5,507 (87%)	5,782 (88%)	6,070 (90%)
Civilian	5,877	6,024	6,175	6,360	6,551	6,747

In line with the trend of development in civilian clothing, the ROK military has gradually made military clothing more functional, making it lighter and better able to endure heat and cold. Moreover, both the maintenance of soldiers' dignity and convenience of tactical activities have been much improved. In particular, to be in conformity with the KS standard, the military clothing numbering system has been diversified like a commercial system to allow soldiers to wear clothing fitting their sizes.

As shown in Table 5-7, according to the "Five-Year Clothing Quality Improvement Plan," the MND has improved combat shoes, summer combat uniforms, undershirts, and underwear. The MND plans to supply woolen socks, combat helmets, sports wear, and gloves with each new year-all product at a quality comparable to that of commercial products.

〈Table 5-7〉 Five-Year Clothing Quality Improvement Plan

Classification	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010
Quality Improvement	-Cotton-padded jumpers and trousers -Winter underwear/ Woolen socks -Shoes/Tissue -Garrison cap	-Combat helmet/ Sports wear -Glove/Going out bag -Razor/Blade	-Winter clothes -Glove -Sweater -Nail clippers	-Bulletproof Jacket -Undershirts/ Shorts -Entrenching Shovel -Soccer shoes	-Summer combat shoes -Equipment color

B. Improvement of Barracks and Residence Environment

In accordance with the trend of social development, including enhanced public awareness and living standards, not to mention small and decrepit barracks, officers' residential facilities are being

improved in stages. Especially, considering the "quality of life" of enlisted soldiers, barrack facilities are being improved drastically.

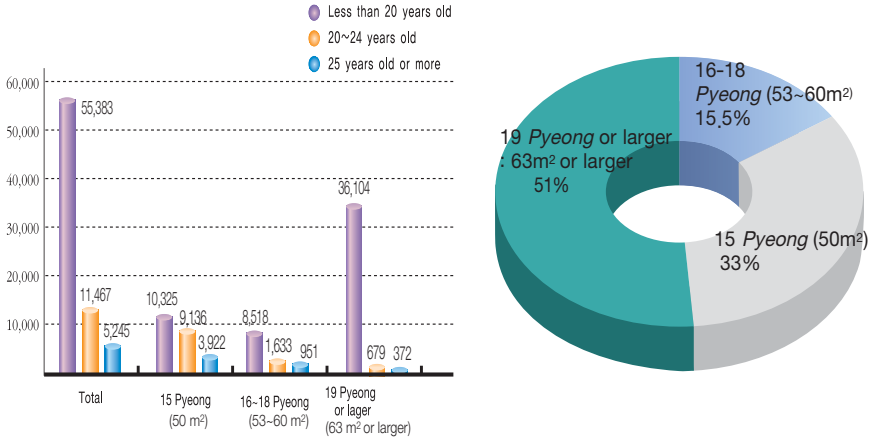
In consideration of the socio-cultural environment where military men of a new generation are raised, the ROK military models barracks on the type found in advanced countries. Per capita area for exclusive use is being expanded from 0.7 *Pyeong* (1 *Pyeong* = 3.3058 m²) to 1.9 *Pyeong*, and the platoon-level consolidated non-bed type is improved to the squad-level individual bed type. In 2006, 698.2 billion won was invested in improving the integrated barracks of 144 Army battalions, 100 barrack buildings of GOP and coast/riverside guard units, and 134 barracks of the Navy and Air Force. According to the improvement project, non-modernized and old barracks, as well as those located in frontline areas, will be improved by 2010. Also, barracks of the consolidated non-bed type already renovated will be replaced by those with individual beds by 2015.

A total of 963.7 billion won has been invested in the improvement of 16,540 officers' residential units that are 15 *Pyeong* or smaller, or 25 years old or more. However, there are still 27,487 military households that qualify as decrepit and small residential units, a number that comprises 34.5% of all military households. The status of military residence based on construction year and size is presented in Figure 5-8.

Those particular 27,487 military houses will be renovated or constructed to national housing standard of 24~38 *Pyeong* or more by 2011. Furthermore, 18,000 military houses will be constructed through the Build-Transfer-Lease (BTL) method to improve military housing conditions drastically.

BTL (Build-Transfer-Lease): The BTL is a lease-type private funding project method. First, a private enterprise constructs a social infrastructure using its own fund. While transferring the ownership of the constructed infrastructure to the state or a local government, it leases the facilities to the state or a local government to recover the investment cost.

〈Figure 5-8〉 Status of Military Residence Based on the Construction Year and Size
(As of Dec. 2005 : one *Pyeong* equivalent to 3.3058 m²)



Regarding bachelor officers' quarters, many of the residents are aged 25 years or more, and in some cases, two to three officers may share a single residence. The MND is going to renovate quarters for those aged 25 or more and construct 31,430 new quarters by allocating available financial resources by 2011 in order to provide one residence for each applicable officer.

C. Improvement of the Military Medical Support System

The MND will simplify the medical command system and divide medical support into two branches (medical operation & medical administration) in order to accommodate the medical support system to changes within the military operation environment. The military medicine system will also be reorganized to activate research in military special medical areas.

The MND is attempting to establish what is tentatively named as the "Military Professional Graduate School of Medicine and Dentistry" in order to diversify ways of securing and training competent military medical personnel as well as to acquire military doctors for long-term service. In addition, a military medical academy providing duty training and basic education for military medical personnel will be introduced as a means of sustaining high-quality medical examinations and treatments.

The operating system of military hospitals will be improved to guarantee patients' rights to access medical treatments. Military hospitals will be classified into mobile support hospitals, base hospitals, and central hospitals depending on the services they provide. Then the operating system will be improved to become a region-based medical treatment closing system responding to patients' conditions. The ROK military will open additional clinic departments in division-level medical squads and promote both the standardization as well as modulization of field medical facilities and equipment to build up field medical support capabilities. Furthermore, the ROK military will introduce an air medical evacuation battalion that retrieve patients and assigns reformed ambulances.

In an effort to upgrade the Armed Forces Capital Hospital to the level of a university

Mobile Support Hospital:
It carries mobile medical support to wartime supporting units. As the hospital involving the minimum surgical operation function, it includes the Byeokje, Ildong, Chuncheon, and Gangreung hospitals in the front line, and the Busan hospital in the rear line.

Base Hospital:
The base hospital provides treatments at the private general hospital level, and also the medical support to surgical operations-needed by patients in the whole military force or local units. It includes the Daejeon, Yangju, Wonju, Daegu, and Gwangju hospitals.

Central Hospital:
The central hospital provides treatments at the university hospital level to patients in the whole military force. Presently, the Armed Forces Capital Hospital is performing the mission. But, its task will be transferred to the Armed Forces Central Medical Center, which will be constructed in the future.

▲ Scene of an advanced surgical operation

hospital, it will be upgraded to assume the duties of a practicing hospital (with research and educational functions), and its tasks will be converted to the tentatively named "Armed Forces Central Medical Center" of the ubiquitous type in the 21st century.

D. Improvement of the Living Conditions of Service Members' Families

(1) Educational Support for the Children of Service Members

Professional military personnel face serious constraints on their children's education, for their duties require them to work in remote places, move frequently, and live apart from their families. To alleviate these problems, the ROK military is pursuing a plan to expand dormitories to house the children of service members and increase opportunities for the children's special admission to universities.

Currently, 12 dormitories for the children of service members (accommodating about 2,000 persons in total) are operating in 10 cities around the nation. In 2009, additional dormitories accommodating over 400 persons will be built in Seoul.

The university special admissions system for service members' children is currently being implemented at 62 universities in 2006. The MND plans to expand the application of this system to more universities based on their educational qualities and employment prospects, so that more service members' children may benefit. In addition, the MND provides road-shows to explain the entrance examination to service members' children (as well as parents) every year. The meeting materials are also posted on the internet home page to provide relevant information.

(2) Provision of Incentives to Address the Problem of Low Fertility

The MND considers the phenomenon of low fertility as a national issue because a decrease in population signals a decrease in economic activities; to combat this phenomenon, it promotes

various policies to encourage births. First of all, according to the "MND Guide to Grant Incentives to have Children," families with multiple children are given top priority when moving into military residence, assigned to spacious residence, preferential payment of the rent fund, and benefits of using welfare facilities. Because of these measures, the MND was recognized as a superior institute for the promotion of child births in Korea by the "Committee on Ageing Society and Population Policy." In addition, personal affairs policies for married military couples are being revised, and the "Veterans' Pension Act" was revised to the effect that when a retirement allowance is paid, the leave of absence period for pregnancy and delivery is fully calculated into the period of service.

(3) Recreational Facilities

Currently, the ROK military directly operates 9 central recreational facilities. In addition, it holds 2,324 membership accounts in civilian condominiums and intends on securing more than 100 additional accounts every year.

▲ Military recreational facility at Seogwipo Condominium

In order to help professional service members enjoy their leisure time and build up physical strength, the ROK military currently has 29 sports centers. Three additional sport centers are being built in the Gyeryongdae area, the aviation school, as well as the Air Force's Seosan Wing. Furthermore, a sports center at Haenam (for the Navy), Osan, and the Sacheon Wing are planned for construction or expansion.

In the future, based on the concept of a belt, the ROK military will establish a set of recreational facilities (welfare centers, recreational centers, condominium, sport centers, etc.) in major tourist spots by region, to be available all year round.

E. Reinforcement of Employment Support for Expectant Veterans

(1) Progress and Future Direction of Employment Support

Because retired service personnel released from the military are

▲ Information & communication education for officers to be discharged

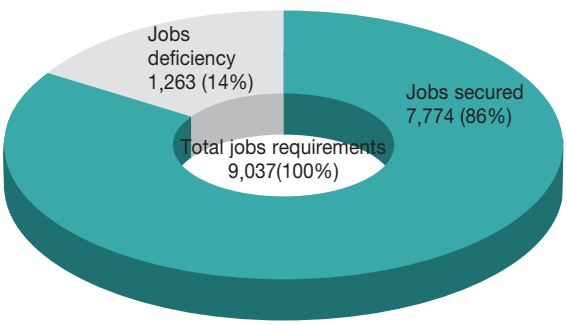
"present service members' future," support for the stable reentry of these men into society improves the morale of present military service personnel, affecting the strength of the military as a whole.

Thus, the MND and each Service established a department taking exclusive charge of veterans in 2003 and has actively implemented employment support plans at the whole military level.

The directions the employment support policy are taking are: 1) expanding the range of job slots open for members over 20 years in service, both within and outside the military to make employment more readily available; 2) providing job guidance and counseling for members over 10 years in service in order to raise their employment competition abilities and help them compete for limited job opportunities regarding military-related or civilian job openings; and 3) providing job offerings and employment information to members under 10 years of service to support employment conditions.

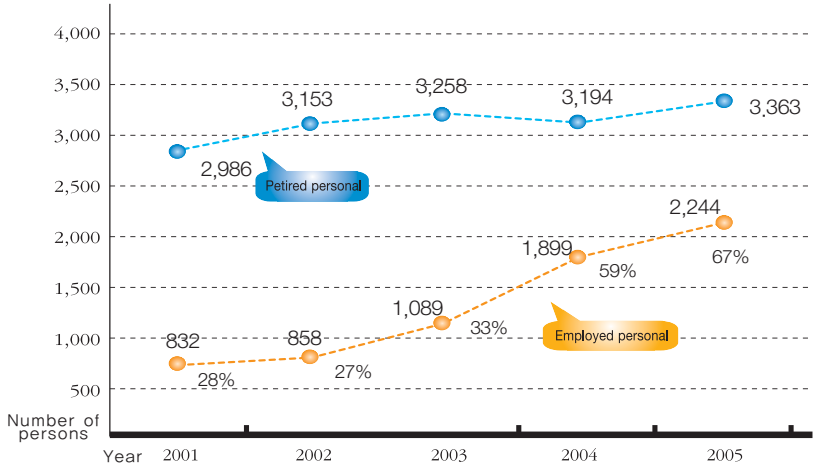
Based on this employment support policy, the hiring of knowledgeable and militarily experienced veterans as full-time instructors in military education institutes, not to mention experienced training veterans as scientific training instructors is expanding. Also, the increse of the range of civilian occupations in the military sphere, such as management staff of military welfare facilities, reserve force commanders, employees of military-related organizations, etc. is actively being promoted, as seen in Figure 5-9 below.

〈Figure 5-9〉 Status of Jobs Secured ('04-'10) (Unit: number of jobs)



The "Committee for the Support of Veterans" was set up under the control of the Office of the Prime Minister, and the government is making efforts to generate more jobs for retired service members. The latest employment rates are presented in Figure 5-10, as shown below.

〈Figure 5-10〉 Reemployment Status of Military Veterans ('01~'05)

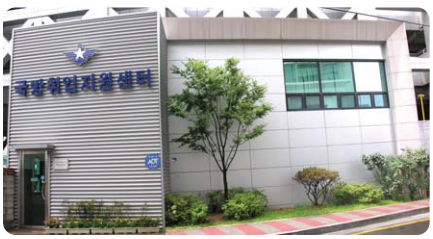


※ Retired Personnel: retired on the relevant year
※ Employed Personnel: employed on the relevant year among retired personnel within 5 years
※ The average percentage of employment among retired personnel within the last 5 years is 43%.

(2) Strengthening of Job Guidance and Education System

Various education programs are implemented to improve employment competitiveness of impending veterans. Especially, customized job guidance programs for specific occupations are developed to vastly improve employment chances.

Through the creation of several customized education programs directly related to an occupation, such as building manager, guidance counselor, logistic manager in harbors, small and medium enterprise site manager, administrator, and Chinese instructor, employment rates are increasing. Furthermore, through various commissioned education programs in professional institutes and private institutes indirectly related to employment, employment capabilities are strengthened. Lately, through the military, industry, and academy agreement, the pursuit of

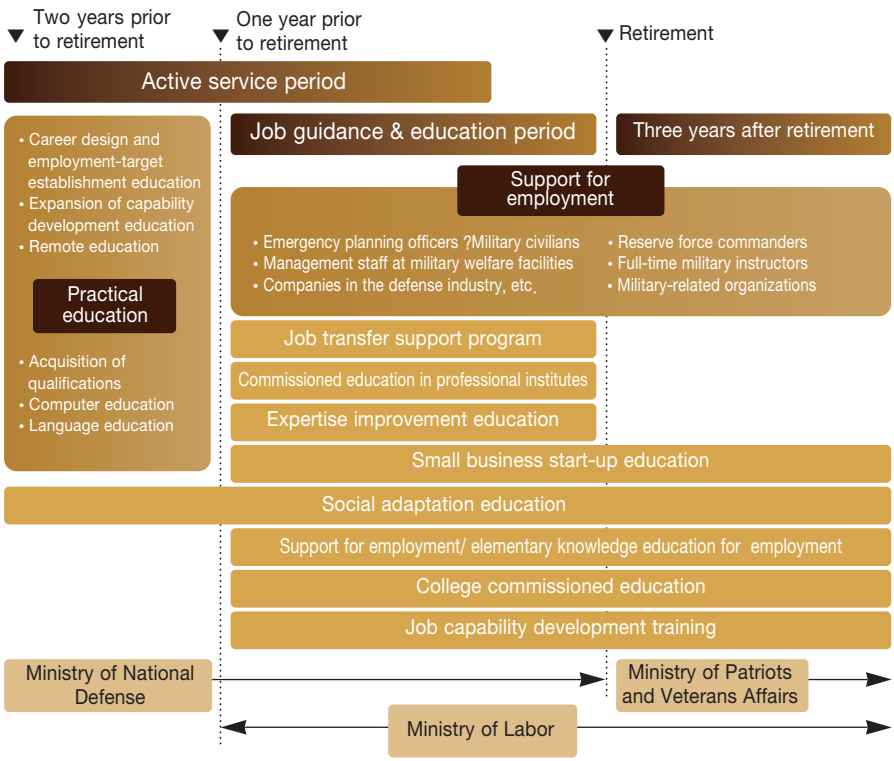


customized vocational education required by business is active in order to raise employment rates and improve technical job skills.

Also, to conveniently provide information to remote and distant unit service members, an education tour process operated starting from 2006. For soon to be discharged service members, an employment and establishment exposition is held (every May and October), a job offer and hunting day activated to not only provide various information but also to induce hiring and employment counseling on the spot. Therefore, employment support activities are strongly promoted.

Through the "MND Job-Seeking Support Center," a military employment information system has been structured to: a) present more pertinent and varied education, b) present employment and business star-tup

〈Figure 5-11〉 Military Job Guidance and Education System



information, and c) provide counseling for applicants, which includes interaction with the business personnel supervisor and email contacts for various CEOs to arrange employment. Advertisements using military buses, regular military satellite TV, etc. are also actively involved. A military job guidance and education system is shown below in Figure 5-11.

F. Improvement of the Military Pension System

(1) Characteristics of the Military Pension System

The military pension system, which had been operating under the "Public Officials Pension Act" (enacted on January 1, 1960), was separated from the Act on January 2, 963 due to the unique characteristics of military duty.

The purpose of the military pension system is to stabilize the livelihood and enhance the welfare of veterans as well as their bereaved families. The system pays an appropriate amount of money when military personnel retire due to age, physical/mental disability, death, or medical treatment for any disease or injury incurred in the line of duty. This system is a strong manifestation of national compensation, in addition to that of social insurance and living security.

The reason for having this system in place is that military personnel must fulfill their missions even at the cost of their lives in order to safeguard the nation and protect the lives and property of the people. The life of military personnel is seriously restricted for reasons such as emergency standby, operation and exercise, and frequent moving. If they fail to be promoted, mandatory retirement is inevitable at the age of 45 to 56, when the outlay typically reaches the peak in life. Reemployment prospects after retirement are limited since the military knowledge they have accumulated during active duty is hardly compatible with civilian occupations. These characteristics of military duty are accommodated by the system.

(2) Improvement of the System for Financial Stabilization

The military pension fund has suffered deficits since 1973. As a result, the government has compensated for these deficiencies. The

reason for such shortages is that the numer of pension beneficiaries increased when an appropriate level of funding had not yet been secured during the early phases of implementing the military pension system. Under the military pension system, beneficiaries are eligible for pension without paying contributions for the period preceding the enactment of the "Veterans' Pension Act." For those who fought in wars such as the Korean War and the Vietnam War, the number of days in combat was tripled when calculating the amount of pension without additional financial support from the government. Because of early retirement under the unique characteristics of military duty, the beneficial period of military pensioners is relatively longer than those of other pension beneficiaries. Consequently, the government revised the "Veterans' Pension Act" to redress deficits within the military pension fund and stabilize the pension finance. As part of such efforts, the government revised the "Veterans' Pension Act" in 2000, increasing the proportion covered by individuals and the state from 7.5% to 8.5% as shown below in Table 5-12.

〈Table 5-12〉 Increase of Coverage Rates by Individuals and the State

Classification	1963	1970	1996	1999	2001
Coverage Rate (%)	3.5	5.5	6.5	7.5	8.5

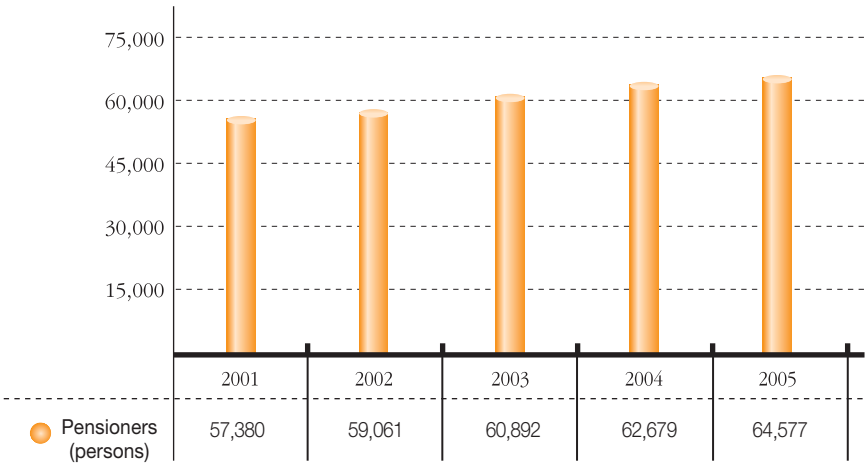
In addition, instead of active duty compensation increase rates, the fluctuation rates of the consumer price index were applied in raising military pensions. The government also changed the basis for calculating the amount of pension from the compensation earned in the last month of military service to the average monthly compensation for the three years preceding retirement.

Furthermore, in the case of a budget shortfall of the military pension fund, the government ensures that it is covered by the national treasury. In addition, the government legislated the accumulation of a legal reserve. Through such institutional devices, the government has laid the foundation for stabilizing the fund. Moreover, a new information system for military pensions has been developed and serviced since May 2006 to provide various pension related information to military pensioners.

The means testing system (in which a part of the pension within a half of the pension is suspended for payment for

pensioners who have incomes over a certain amount of money) has been in operation since November 2006. This system is expected to help stabilize fund financing. The status of pensioners by year is presented in Figure 5-13.

〈Figure 5-13〉 Status of Pensioners by Year



Section 2. Reform of Defense Resource Management

The change in the environment of MND resource management, such as the increase in maintenance expenses based upon the concentration and diversification of the weapons system, calls for a progressive change in logistics areas.

Thus, to improve the ROK military's logistics support abilities, the structuring of a user and duty-centered integrated logistics information system is necessary. Specifically, to eliminate the causes of dispute and lowered quality, competitive procurement is promoted as much as possible. In addition, to allow the utilization of allied countries' resource abilities in times of emergency to secure logistics support, advancing the allied logistics support system, as well as concluding interactive logistics support pacts with the third countries providing international logistics cooperation, are crucial.

Meanwhile, the efficiency of the MND management can be raised with the active usage of civilian resources in simple support duties and areas in which civilians hold a competitive advantage. By introducing competitive principles and civilian management techniques into the combat service support areas, an efficient and high-quality service can be provided through a military executive agency who accomplishes the efficiency of defense management

1. Efficient Use of Defense Resources

Lately, in the area of logistics resource management, three environmental changes worth noting have occurred. First, the demand of advanced logistics resource management based upon future war patterns; second, the construction of an integrated information system in logistics resource areas based upon latest information technology; and third, a quantified objective assessment on logistics support performance, etc.

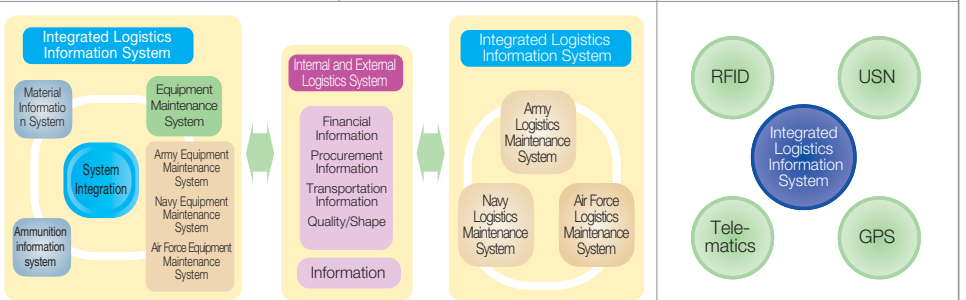
In order for our military to effectively react according to environmental changes and achieve innovative performance, logistics assets must be openly accounted for and an integrated

logistics information system established for effective operational support. While reforming defense procurement methods, which are a major cause of internal disputes, the MND is focusing on developing a user-centered performance index and building up the performance management system to promote the efficient management of defense resources.

A. Construction of Integrated Logistics Information System

The MND is promoting an evolutionary information system centered around the user and mission by visibly accounting for all the Services' logistics resources and applying the latest information technology to innovatively improve the logistics support capabilities. Seen in Figure 5-14, the first stage is producing a functional information system through the development of an equipment maintenance and transport information system as well as improving the efficiency of the deteriorating ammunition and material information system by 2008. The second stage is constructing a singular integrated logistics information system by combining materials, ammunition and equipment maintenance in order to strengthen the link between the internal and external logistics systems by 2014.

〈Figure 5-14〉 Conceptional Diagram for the Integrated logistics Information System by Stage

Classification	Stage 1 ('05~'08)	Stage 2 ('11~'14)	Stage 3 ('06~'22)
Core concept	Functional System Development / Performance Improvement	Web-Based One-Family System	U-Integrated Logistics Information System
Construction concept			
Major Features	• Development of Equipment Maintenance Information System • Development of Transportation Information System • Performance Improvement of Ammunition/ Material Information Systems	• Each Service's Materials + Ammunition + Equipment Maintenance Information System Integration → Establishment of a Single Logistics System • Strengthening the Linkage with Other Systems	• Application of New u-ITs - RFID, Telematics, etc. • Establishment of an u-Integrated Logistics Information System

RFID: Radio Frequency Identification

From 2005, in order to continually account for logistics supplies and goods, ubiquitous technology including the RFID has been applied to ammunition maintenance as a model for others. Moreover, to enhance the united logistics support capabilities between the ROK and U.S., the RFID based G-ITV (Global In Transit Visibility) experimental system is underway.

B. Expansion of the Competition in Defense Procurement

To resolve the issues of cost overruns or low quality goods in negotiated contracts, the MND is promoting a gradual expansion in competition by dividing group negotiated contract items by "those items by small-to-medium enterprises" and "other contracts items."

"Group negotiated contract items by small-to-medium enterprises" are to be procured by more competitive methods in accordance with government policy. In 2006, model categories (such as clothing, foods) were elected for competitive contracts to be offered to small to medium enterprises, a practice soon to be implemented in all aspects from 2007. "Other negotiated contact items" are subject to gradual change to competitive contracting from the years 2008 to 2020 through the MND's plans, aiming to reduce associated organizational and company conflicts.

C. Establishment of a Performance Management System of Logistics Support

In current logistics support units, possession rates of approved stock items, supply rates, and stock exhaustion rates have been used as methods to confirm logistics activities in terms of the supplier (logistics support unit) rather than the user (combat unit). Consequently, the improvement of the logistics preparedness has been difficult to quantitatively measure.

To mitigate this problem, the MND is establishing a performance management system which develops and utilizes

performance indices based upon the user. This system involves quantitatively measuring the supplier's logistics activities. The status of performance indices based upon the user is presented in Table 5-15 below.

〈Table 5-15〉 Status of User-Centered Logistics Performance Indices

Function	Performance Indices
Commonness	Customer Waiting Time (CWT), Equipment Operating Rate, Asset Visibility Rate
Requirement	Demand Estimation Accuracy
Procurement	Procurement Lead Time
Supply	Requisition Waiting Time
	Inventory Level
	Meal Satisfaction
	Clothing Satisfaction
Maintenance	Repair Cycle Time (RCT)

CWT (Customer Waiting Time): The time needed for the user to get necessary items after requesting

RCT (Repair Cycle Time): The time needed for the user to get repaired equipments after repair requesting

With the establishment of the logistics support performance management system, logistics preparedness and user satisfaction can be drastically increased. In addition, logistics assets can be efficiently operated and budgets savings realized.

To promote this, the MND developed the performance indexes from 2005 to 2006, reflecting the characteristics of each Service, and will experimentally apply performance indexes after establishing performance management systems in each Service during 2007-2008. After 2009, these measures will be expanded to encompass the whole military.

2. Strengthening of International Logistics Cooperation

International logistics cooperation is strengthened in order to guarantee stable logistics support through the use of allied countries' security support capabilities in case of emergency. According to security environmental changes between the ROK and U.S., while developing the combined logistics support

▲ A scene from the international defence weapons exhibition, "Defense Asia 2006"

system on a more comprehensive and future-orientated basis, the expansion of pragmatic logistics exchange cooperation, such as mutual logistics support pacts and military supplies transfer with the third country, is underway.

A. Logistics Cooperation with the U.S.

CRDL: Critical Requirement Deficiency List

WRSA: War Reserve Stocks for Allies

The ROK military, in preparation for the abolition of the CRDL (at the end of 2004) and the completion of the WRSA program for allies, is searching for ways to firmly maintain the combined logistics preparedness and is preparing for the transfer negotiation of the WRSA. Furthermore, in case of emergency, the ROK and U.S. joint training is put into action to continually supplement and develop wartime support schemes so that additional U.S. troops entering the peninsula can be quickly deployed.

Moreover, for an environmentally friendly disposal of waste ammunition in the ROK, an incinerator was provided among ammunition demilitarizing facilities in June 2006 in Yeongdong-gun, Chungcheongbuk-do.

In the meantime, the large scale exchange of the existing TKP for SNP in April 2005, for the USFK's oil transportation, has reduced oil leaks and restrictions on private property rights to a large degree.

TKP (Trans Korea Pipeline): Established and currently operated by the U.S. Army, the TKP is a long-distance oil pipeline running between Pohang and Uijeongbu (South Korea).

SNP (South-North Pipeline): After the construction of the TKP, the SNP was constructed by Yukong, Inc. and DOPCO., Inc. Now, the Ulsan-Daegu pipeline, Seosan-Cheonan pipeline, Seoul-Incheon pipeline, South-North pipeline, and Hoseo pipeline are all being operated.

B. Logistics Cooperation with the Third Country

The ROK's international status has been raised, resulting in a continual increase of varied logistics cooperation with third countries. Thus, mutual logistics support pacts with Thailand and Australia have been completed, and pacts with Turkey, Philippines, New Zealand, etc. are being pursued. Furthermore, military supplies, such as naval vessels and planes, have been transferred from Philippines, Bangladesh, Kazakhstan, etc., while the transfer of military goods with other countries as part of defense industrial cooperation is also being investigated.

3. Expansion of Civilian Contracts in the Resource Management Area

A. Gradual Expansion of Civilian Contracts

At the moment, the ROK military is enforcing civilian contracting in only certain parts of the military, such as the management of facilities, cleaning and gardening. However, the importance of civilian contracting is to take a larger role in the future. In the resource management area, utilizing civilian contracts in roles such as supporting simple work and areas in which civilians hold an advantage is expected to raise the efficiency of defense management.

Therefore, areas which do not relate directly to combat and military operations and can easily be undertaken by civilians, such as vehicle repairing, managing welfare facilities and officer's cafeteria, establishment and installation, cleaning, gardening, laundering, hair cutting, repairing combat boots, and environmental beautification, will be increasingly contracted out to civilians. From 2007, a detailed scheme will be followed step-by-step. The scheme for civilian contract targets and yearly plan is as Figure 5-16 below.

〈Figure 5-16〉 Promotion Plan for Civilian Contracting

◎ Civilian Contract Targets

Selection Criteria	Targets
Simple service support areas where civilian contract is also more efficient	Vehicle repairing, Commuting bus transportation, Establishment · Installation, Cleaning, Gardening, Environment beautification, Hair cutting · Beauty treatment, Laundering · Repairing services (combat boots, clothing, office utensils, hand tools)
Areas where civilian management principles such as management profit creation, etc., can be introduced	Officer's cafeteria, Unit welfare hall, Central welfare facilities (hotel, condominium, etc.)
Areas where civilians have an advantage, such as high-tech areas	Contract-based maintenance for advanced weapon systems, Development and maintenance of war game models ※ already carried out and promoted
Areas where veterans' experience and expert knowledge can be utilized	Full-time military instructor, Cooperation officer for service in the reserve, Researcher in the military research institute, Counselor for basic rights · discharge applications, Editorial supervisor of doctrine ? drill handbooks, War game instructor · supervisor ※ already carried out and promoted

◎ Civilian Contract Plan by Year

2006	2007	Since 2008
● Selection of civilian contract targets ● Setting up the promotion plan by year	● Statute/guideline supplementation, System establishment ● Partial enforcement of civilian contract ● Assessment of enforcement outcomes, Additional target excavation	● Expansion of civilian contact targets and assessment

B. Fair Selection and Management of Civilian Contract Enterprises

Civilian contract enterprises are selected by objectively setting a standard based upon management results of the requirements, the enhancement of production, and the cutting down of expenses, and civilian contract enterprise information is systematically managed through a database. Also, detailed civilian contract work content, cost calculation method and payment conditions, the opening and conclusion of contract length, and conditions for cancellation are to be maintained in an exact and fair manner. Through setting conditions, such as the duty to notify beforehand, establishment of provisional contract length for the continuation of work, and testing abilities of the enterprise, the appropriate selection of an enterprise can be made fairly. Also, stable service in case of emergency will be promoted.

C. Preservation of Security and Achievement of Missions during Wartime or Emergent States

In order to ensure the smooth completion of combat missions, concluding detailed contracts on civilian contract enterprises' wartime and ordinary duties, and setting up emergency preparation training plans are necessary. Then, training and assessment need to be enforced. In light of the possible strike of civilian contract enterprises and disconnection of service, maintenance of related laws and ordinances, and countermeasures are to be prepared.

To preserve security and prevent the leak of military information outside, a detailed provision on maintaining secrecy is to be included in the contract, and security inspections along with security education are to be continually implemented in civilian contract enterprises.

4. Selection and Management of Military Executive Agency

In the area of combat duty support, competition principles and

civilian management techniques are to be introduced. Organizations that can raise the efficiency of defense management will be appointed as a military executive agency. The publicly hired agency chief is granted the right to control personnel, organization and finance in order to continually enable progress for an organization that provides efficient and high-quality service.

A military executive agency, unlike the simple procedure of openly selecting a commanding officer previously appointed as the officer of active duty and changing the expertise of the organization's external and internal side, is also granted the right of unit management to manage the unit in ways never done before, modernizing into an organization with both flexibility and professionalism.

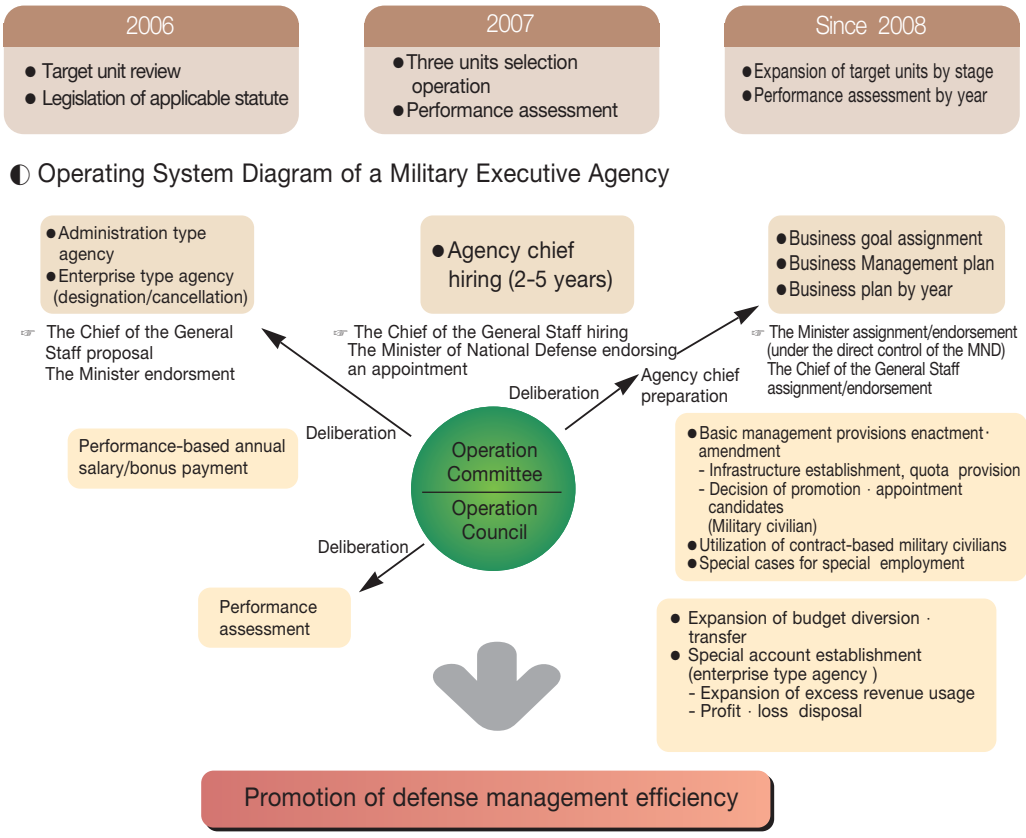
A. Promotion Plan

The promotion plan for the military executive agency, including the management system diagram, is the same as Figure 5-17.

Maintenance depot, supply depot, data processing facility, printing depot, installation field, and welfare bodies must be assessed for performance. Units that can be assessed for performance, and perform duties requiring enforcement and business acumen will be targeted as the military executive agency from 2007 to 2012, and the number of units appointed will be gradually expanded.

For the appointment of the military executive agency, a target unit has to be confirmed and all related areas discussed to form a consensus. A perfected system will perceive the problems beforehand, having selection standards of the target unit established and a selected committee, including a civilian expert, created in order to carefully appoint the target unit.

〈Figure 5-17〉 Promotion Plan for Military Executive Agency



B. Promotion of Enactment of the "Military Executive Agency Act"

In July 2006, a public hearing for the enactment of the system for the military executive agency was held in which the ideas and thoughts of military personnel and civilian were heard. In the proposed "Military Executive Agency Act." the hiring of the agency chief following public recruitment procedures, the agency chief's self-regulated rights in personnel, organization and finance, the progress agreement contract and progress assessment method, the appointment of the military executive agency and conditions set for management, and the installation of an operation council and committee will be stipulated.

C. Management and Experimental Introduction of the Military Executive Agency

In 2007, three units will be experimentally run as military executive agencies in order to minimize problems associated with system operation. Furthermore, the MND is going to ensure the appropriateness and reliability of the performance assessment by quantifying performance indexes, which is based on policy studies of target units. Also, a fair assessment council including civilian experts, will be set up to assess the progress of the commanding officer. Moreover, yearly progress assessment reports will be made. Progress enhancement workshops will commence so that the military executive agency is naturally able to perfectly complete missions in wartime and ordinary situations, while providing a faster and higher-quality service than now.

Section 3. Efficient Allocation and Execution of Defense Budget

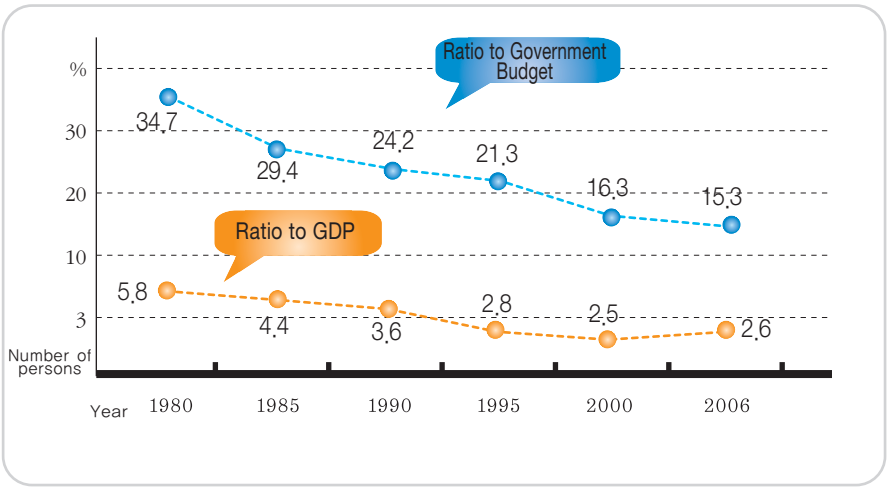
The appropriate defense budget is achieved by balancing the requirements of military power commensurate to security threats and the nation's financial capability. Within a systematically connected system through the "defense planning management system" (planning-programming-budgeting-execution-assessment system), the MND makes efforts not only to secure an appropriate defense budget, but also to allocate available resources to efficiently support the requirements of military power.

1. Stable Securing of an Appropriate Defense Budget

A. Trend of Defense Budget Allocation

The ratios of defense expenditures to GDP and the government budget have changed in line with changes in the security and social environment. As shown in Figure 5-18, until the early 1980s, the ratios of defense expenditure to GDP and government budget stood at 5% to the GDP and 30% to the government budget respectively, as the MND had steadily promoted projects such as "Yulgok project" since the 1970s to build up military strength for self-reliant defense. But from the late 1980s, the defense budget has been on a downward trend until the early 2000s because of the increasing demand for social welfare, as well as the IMF financial crisis from 1997-1998. However, an upward trend for the military budget was established by the Participatory Government to promote "cooperative self-reliant defense." As a result, the defense budget is 2.6% of the nation's GDP and 15% of the government budget, as of 2006.

〈Figure 5-18〉 Ratio of Defense expenditures to GDP and Government Budget



※A new concept of GDP is applied.

A new concept of GDP:
An inter-industry relation table (standard, index) has been expanded according to changes in GDP basic year from 1995 to 2000. As an accounting standard has been converted to "93 SNA," a requirement of an international organization, new projects and social overhead capital have been reflected additionally. (Generally 10~15% increase relative to the existing GDP)

SNA (System of National Accounts):
An accounting standard and system to summarize the results of economic entities' activities as well as the assets and liabilities status of the national economy.

B. Defense Expenditures Commensurate with Security Circumstances

It is desirable that an appropriate defense budget be reached by balancing military requirements commensurate with security threats and the nation's financial capability. However, the "security threat environment" has priority in the allocation of defense budget, for national defense is based on the primary goal of securing national survival. In particular, countries either in a direct military confrontation with enemies, such as the ROK and Israel, or with imminent security threats must decide defense expenditures proportional to their "security threat level."

Viewed in this light, even though the ROK is at the top of the "security threat level," as shown in Table 5-19 the allocation of resources for national defense remains lower than other countries facing disputes and confrontations.

〈Table 5-19〉 Ratio of Defense Expenditures to GDP in Countries Facing Disputes and Confrontations (%)

(as of 2004)

Israel	Saudi Arabia	Syria	Egypt	Cuba	US	China	Pakistan	Turkey	India	Greece	South Korea
8.3	8.2	7.4	4.6	4.0	3.9	3.7	3.5	3.4	3.0	2.9	2.4

※Source : The military Balance 2005~2006 (London: *International Institute for Strategic Studies*, Oct. 2005. The ratio of South Korea is based on government statistics.)

☞ Refer to Appendix 10 "Comparison of Military Expenditures of Major Countries."

2. 2006 Defense Budget

A. General Account Budget

The amount and functional allocation of the FY 2006 defense budget are presented in Table 5-20 and Figure 5-21.

〈Table 5-20〉 Defense Budget for FY 2006

(Unit: billion won)

Classification	FY2005	%	FY2006	%	Increase/ Decrease	%
Total Defense Expenditure	21,102.6	100.0	22,512.9	100.0	1,410.3	6.7
DCI Costs	7,298.7	34.6	7,499.4	*33.3	200.7	2.7
Ordinary Operating Costs	13,803.9	65.4	15,013.5	*66.7	1,209.6	8.8
Personnel Costs	8,594.8	40.7	9,196.7	40.9	601.9	7.0
Project Costs	5,209.1	24.7	5,816.8	25.8	607.7	11.7

※Ratio changes after the transfer to DAPA (Ordinary Operating Costs : 66.7→74.2%, DCI Costs : 33.3→25.8%)
※MND Budget (Ordinary Operating Costs)
: 15.0→16.7 trillion won, DAPA Budget (DCI Costs) : 7.5→5.8 trillion won
※Expenditures that are not closely connected with force reinforcement in existing categories are listed under MND Ordinary Operating Costs, including a share of defense expense, costs for relocating US forces in Korea, and repair/parts spending. Operating costs of DAPA and subsidiary agencies are classified as DCI costs.

The defense budget for FY 2006 concentrates on the reinforcement of self-reliant defense capabilities and the improvement of soldiers' morale as well as welfare in line with the promotion of the "Defense Reform 2020." Financial resources earmarked for national defense amount to 22.5129 trillion won, up 6.7% from the figure of 21.1026 trillion won (including the revised supplementary budget of 280 billion won) in 2005. Such an amount comprises 15.3% of the government budget and 2.6% of GDP.

Defense Capacity Improvement: Until now, terms of investments for force reinforcement had been used differently, such as "Force Improvement," "Force Investment," and "Defense Capacity Improvement," in line with changes of categories. However, with the inauguration of the Defense Acquisition Program Administration (DAPA), DAPA budget means "Defense Capacity Improvement." Therefore, the same term, DCI, applies to the following.

The allocation for Defense Capacity Improvements totaled 7.4994 trillion won, up 2.7% from FY 2005. The DCI allotment reflects requirements to secure self-reliant defense capabilities and core combat capabilities, including K1A1 tanks, new 155mm self-propelled artillery, 7,000 ton-class destroyers, 1,800 ton-class submarines, F-15K fighters, and AWACS.

☞ Refer to Appendix 11 "Annual Government and Defense Budgets."

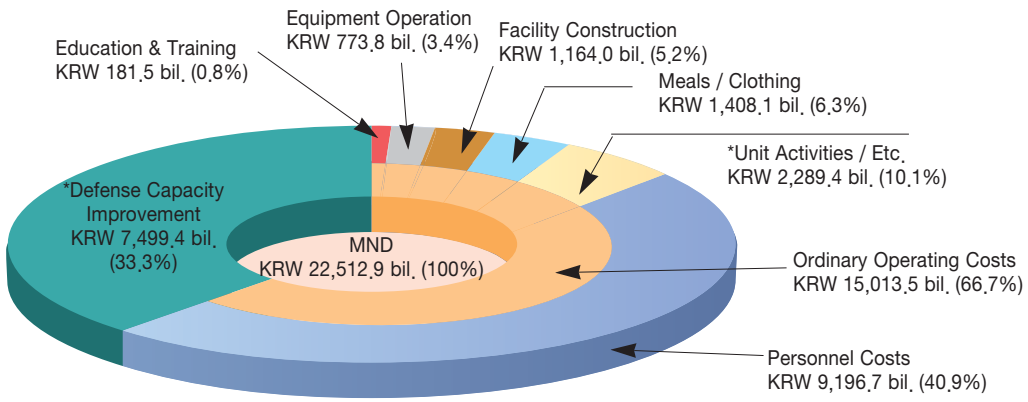
To maximize existing combat capabilities, it reflects several costs, such as the costs of package requirements (including K-9 armored ammunition carriers), equipment upgrades (including F-

5E/F), and aging vehicle replacement requirements (including portable antiaircraft missiles). Ammunition reserves and equipment maintenance costs are also allocated to improve warfare sustainability capabilities and operation rates. In addition, it focuses on the expansion of R&D investment regarding core weapons systems, including Korean helicopters and next-generation tanks.

Ordinary operational costs rose to 15.135 trillion won, an increase of 8.8% from 2005. Such expenses mainly reflect the cost of enhancing service members' morale and welfare based on creating quarters furnished with individual beds, securing BOQs, increasing enlisted soldiers salaries & medical fees during vacation periods, and newly introduced expenses for commanding activities of squad leaders.

In addition, such expenses reflect the increased budget for purchasing fuel for equipment operation and securing necessary training grounds to maintain combat readiness and capabilities. The expenses also take into account financial resources required to expand environmental preservation facilities and relocate civilian houses near ammunition dumps. These efforts are to promote public convenience and to reflect the financial requirements for the enforcement of special laws aimed at providing compensation to personnel who performed special operations.

〈Figure 5-21〉 Allocation of FY 2006 Defense Budget by Function



* Unit Operation, etc. : unit operation, facility maintenance, military procurement, reserved forces, research institution, support for the USFK, etc.
* DCI costs : 5,807.7 bil. won (25.8%) after the transfer to DAPA

B. Special Account Budget

There are four special account budgets under the MND's control: Special Accounts for Military Pensions, Special Accounts for National Property Management, Special Accounts for Executive Agency, and Special Accounts for Relocating USFK Bases. The amount and allocation of the Special Accounts Budget for 2006 is presented in Table 5-22.

〈Table 5-22〉 Status of Special Account Budget for FY-2006

(Unit: 100 million won)

Classification	FY2005	FY2006	Increase/ Decrease	%
Special Accounts for Military Pensions	16,608	17,747	1,139	6.9
Special Accounts for National Property Management	6,792	3,114	△3,678	△54.2
Special Accounts for Executive Agency	297	261	△36	△12.1
Special Accounts for Relocating USFK Bases	-	6,264	-	-

Revenues for the Special Accounts for Military Pensions are used to pay out pensions to retired military personnel. The Special Accounts for Military Pensions for FY 2006 were increased to 1.7747 trillion won, up 6.9% from the previous year to reflect the increase in pension recipients as well as the rise of consumer prices and the rate of improving treatments in 2005.

Revenues to fund the Special Accounts for National Property Management are spent on relocating military facilities to rural areas and purchasing private land that the military is currently using. In order to settle civil petitions, the Special Accounts for National Property Management for FY 2006 set aside 311.4 billion won for relocating 30 military facilities and purchasing private land that military units currently use.

The Special Accounts for Executive Agency was created to ensure that the Defense Agency for Public Information Services serves as an executive agency that pursues the public interest with enhanced independence and efficiency in terms of operation. For FY 2006, 26.1 billion won was allocated to these accounts to fund

the production of newspapers, broadcasting programs, movies, as well as military satellite television broadcasting.

The Special Accounts for Relocating USFK Bases is a new budget account to merge and relocate USFK bases to Pyeongtaek or other places. For FY 2006, 626.4 billion won was allocated to purchase land and construct facilities.

3. 2007~2011 Mid-Term Defense Plan

A. Focus and Scale of the Mid-Term Defense Plan

To promote the first stage of the "Defense Reform 2020," the "2007~2011 Mid-Term Defense Plan" was formulated to mainly reflect the requirements for self-reliant war deterrence and advanced defense management. Under the plan, 150.7499 trillion won was allocated, maintaining the average increasing rate of 9.9% per year.

The portion of Improvements in Defense Capabilities that stands at 25.8% (based on the budget transferred to Defense Acquisition Program Administration) of the total defense budget as of 2006 will be gradually increased to 35.9% by 2011.

B. Planned Programs by Area

(1) Defense Capacity Improvements

Defense Capacity Improvements aim to ensure self-reliant war deterrence and establish the combat force infrastructure for national defense. Consequently, DCIs place the focus on: a) securing independent surveillance and reconnaissance capabilities, b) building a battlefield management system to integrate combat capabilities, c) securing military strength to prepare for unspecified future threats, d) reinforcing the existing force, and e) strengthening domestic R&D capabilities as well as the infrastructure of the defense industry.

The allocation for research and development will be annually increased to actively promote the independent development of

advanced weapons systems for which the ROK is currently reliant on advanced countries and to develop core technologies according to evolving future battlefield environments. In addition, these accounts will facilitate an open R&D in association with developments in national scientific technology.

(2) Ordinary Operational Expenses

To establish an advanced defense management base and new military culture in the barracks, ordinary operational expenses focus primarily on improving soldiers' morale and welfare, enforcing defense digitization and scientific defense management, fostering elite soldiers, improving the existing combat force's operation and maintenance, preserving the environment, and enhancing public convenience. (See Table 5-23.)

To boost morale and promote the welfare of soldiers, enlisted men's monthly salaries were raised to a realistic level. Besides, these expenditures reflect requirements to improve the aged integrated barracks of 260 battalions and 1400 residential facilities as well as to modernize the 3 military hospitals

For the purpose of nurturing high-quality human resources and enhancing the maintenance as well as operation of the existing combat force, the ROK military will expand domestic/overseas commissioned education, not to mention local/wide area networks. In addition, the compensation for reserve force training will be provided.

Regarding environmental preservation and public interest protection, ordinary operational expenses include the installation costs of environmental preservation facilities (i.e., sewage/wastewater disposal plant, soil contamination prevention facilities). Also, these allotments reflect the requirements of a safe zone around ammunition dumps and special laws to provide compensation to personnel who performed special operations.

〈Table 5-23〉 2007-2011 Mid-Term Defense Budgets

(Unit: trillion won)

Classification	2006	Target Period					
		2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	Total
Defense Expenditure (Ratio to GDP) (Increase rate)	**22.5** (2.57) (6.7)	**24.7** (2.62) (9.9)	**27.2** (2.69) (9.9)	**29.9** (2.75) (9.9)	**32.8** (2.82) (9.9)	**36.1** (2.89) (9.9)	**150.7** (2.76) (9.9)
Ordinary Operating Costs (Allocation rate) (Increase rate)	**16.7** (74.2) (6.2)	**17.7** (71.7) (6.2)	**18.8** (69.2) (6.0)	**20.0** (67.0) (6.5)	**21.8** (66.5) (9.1)	**23.1** (64.1) (6.0)	**101.5** (67.3) (6.8)
***DCI costs** (Allocation rate) (Increase rate)	※**5.8** (25.8) (6.2)	**7.0** (29.3) (20.6)	**8.4** (30.8) (19.8)	**9.9** (33.0) (17.5)	**11.0** (33.5) (11.6)	**13.0** (35.9) (17.7)	**49.2** (32.7) (17.4)

※Based on the DAPA budget.

In a bid to secure the financial resources for defense reform, the MND will make every effort to reflect combat force requirements decided through the "defense planning management system" to the Mid-Term Defense Plan. At the same time, it will try to include the resources requirement of the Mid-Term Defense Plan within the national fiscal management plan, which is a governmental mid-term plan.

In line with the changing security environment, the ROK military will examine which weapon system has the priority, when is the right time to incorporate the system into force capabilities, and how investments are concentrated on the most important projects through budget reallocations to utilize the defense budget efficiently within the limited defense resources.

National Fiscal Management Plan: The "National Fiscal Management Plan" have become legally effective since Jan. 1, 2007 through the "National Finance Act." Therefore, this plan should be used as basic reference when drawing up budgets.

Section 4. Pursuit of Defense Digitization

Defense digitization aims at enhancing military capabilities by automating command/control systems and battlefield management. In addition, it pursues the realization of defense management and operation of low-expense as well as high-efficiency based on the digitization and electronic transactions of defense resource management. To achieve these goals, the MND is promoting an expansion of digitization infrastructure, linking the defense digitization with government policies and digitization education.

1. Digitization of Battlefield Management

The digitization of battlefield management, based on the concept of future battlefield, aims at setting up a battlefield management system that is able to integrate and operate all components of combat force, such as ISR, command/control system, and PGM. The promotion of the digitization of battlefield management is divided into three parts: the command/control system, the military intelligence system, and the modeling & simulation system.

A. Command/Control System

The conceptual diagram of battlefield management is described in Figure 5-24 below. The Joint Chiefs of Staff have operated the CPAS, which was developed to automate the major combat force, command post functions of operational units, and enable transmission/receipt of telegraphic messages to and from tactical units under their command. Furthermore, since 2004, the JCS has developed the KJCCS, an upgraded form of the CPAS, which will be established with the aim of interoperability with tactical C4I systems of the individual Services by 2007.

CPAS: Command Post Automation System

KJCCS: Korea Joint Command and Control System

ATCIS: Army Tactical Command Information System

The army tactical C4I system, called ATCIS, was built to automate the battlefield function of tactical echelons of the corps or subordinate level. System capacity will be upgraded, and the number of targeting units will be also expanded by 2009.

The naval tactical C4I system, called KNCCS, based on the existing KNTDS, will be established centered on the operation headquarters to enable command/control of integrated naval operations by 2007. The system is scheduled to be delivered to all units by 2010.

An air-combat tactical C4I system will be developed by 2007 in order to support aerial operations, including the identification of current situations, decision-making by commanders and personnel of each operational echelon, and the consideration of interoperability with the existing TACC and MCRC.

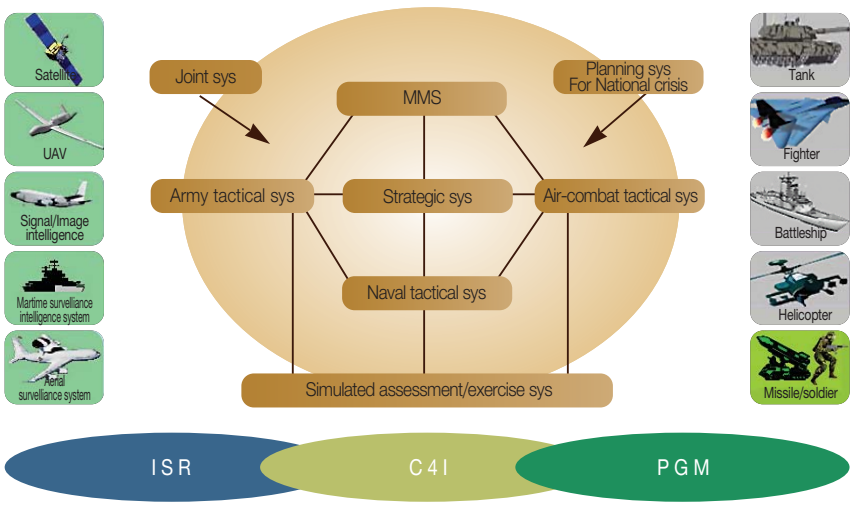
KNCCS:
Korean Naval Command Control System

KNTDS:
Korean Naval Tactical Data System

TACC:
Theater Air Control Center

MCRC:
Master Control & Reporting Center

〈Figure 5-24〉 Conceptional Diagram of the Battlefield Management Digitization



B. Military Intelligence System

MIMS is an automated military intelligence system integrating the intelligence functions of individual Services (and each echelon) and ensuring the distribution as well as sharing of military intelligence by all Services on a real-time basis. It is scheduled to develop an application system that will enable inputting, saving, searching, and distributing by 2008, as well as to also establish hardware like a basic communication network by 2010.

MIMS:
Military Intelligence Management System

C. Modeling & Simulation System

The MND is building a simulation system that allows for the

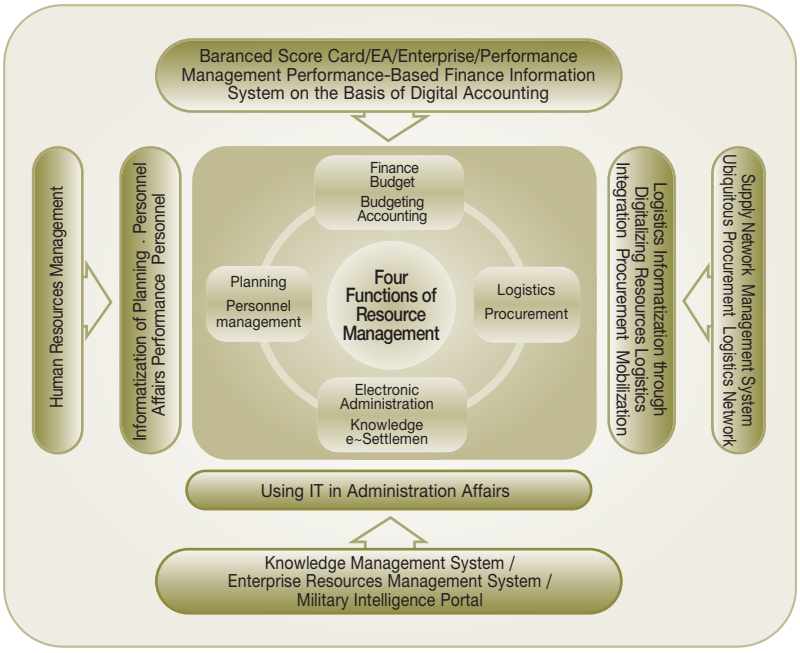
analysis of military principles, battlefield management concepts, unit structures, and operational plans appropriate for future warfare. Based on such efforts, the MND is also establishing a decision-making and R&D simulation system that supports analysis and assessment for each stage of weapons system acquisition.

The ROK military has developed and operated several training models for each echelon, including "Taegeuk JOS" (the three Services joint training model of the Joint Chiefs of Staff), and "Changjo 21" (the training model for division and corps-level units of the ROK Army). The naval and air-combat forces have each been developing "Cheonghae" and "Changgong." In addition, the MND is pursuing the expansion of the training simulation system applicable to the JCS, individual Services, each echelon and each battlefield function.

KCTC: Korean Army Advanced Combat Training Center

The MND already set up the battalion-level KCTC in 2005 to help troops accumulate indirect warfare experience in simulated battlefield environments, which is improving soldiers' capability to adopt to battlefield conditions as well as their combat capabilities.

〈Figure 5-25〉 Function and Composition of Resource Management System Digitization



2. Resource Management Digitization

The function and composition of resource management system digitization are presented in Figure 5-25.

Resource management digitization is divided into four functional categories, namely budgeting/accounting, planning /personnel management, logistics/procurement, and e-administration. Performance-based digitization investment and evaluation are promoted on the basis of EA. In addition, it builds up an integrated defense budget information system linking national and defense financial information for the efficient operation and management of defense resources. Finally, the MND is promoting digitization of resources using ubiquitous-based technologies.

EA:
Enterprise Architecture

A. Blueprint Plan of Defense Information Technology.

The MND is pushing ahead with the establishment of EA on all Service levels, which will be utilized to clear up any obscurity of digitization requirements, prevent double investments in digitization project, and integrate information systems. EA development was initiated for the MND in 2006 and will be completed for all the Services by 2009. At the same time, the MND is working on EA development for the battlefield management system, which has been running as a model since 2004.

The EA, a blueprint of defense information technology, will be an architecture base of individual Services and related groups in alignment with a governmental level EA. In future, the requirements of digitization projects will be requested, controlled and assessed based on the architecture of each group,

B. Digitization Support through Resource Digitization

The MND is digitizing entire resources in various ways. It also plans to establish a defense integrated administration reform system associated with a government-promoted electronic administration, defense integrated finance information system connected with the national finance information service, and

information resource management system.

Regarding the defense integrated administration reform system, the MND will improve the existing electronic decision system and military portal system, ultimately supplementing these systems with a performance management system, service management system, and knowledge management system. The core system of the defense integrated system became incorporated into force capabilities in 2006 and will be upgraded step by step by 2010.

The integrated defense finance information system is designed to work with double-entry bookkeeping and accrual basis accounting in accordance with the reform of the government accounting system. Through this system, it is possible to share information through the digital accounting and budget system, as well as establish the transparency of budgeting connected with the defense resource management information system. The BPR/ISP projects in the development plan for the defense integrated finance information system were completed in the first half of 2006, and the core system is developing now.

BPR: Business Process Reengineering

ISP: Information Strategy/Planning

The information resource management system is promoted to develop core technology and apply it to units at the level of a division/brigade or higher in 2008. It will be gradually expanded in stages to all of the Services that have information resources from 2009. As a method of resource digitization, the MND will make full use of ubiquitous-based technologies, including agent software automatically collecting information of the PC and RFID for defense digitization.

RFID: Radio Frequency Identification

Digitization of logistics resources based on universally available technologies enables the automatic collection of logistics and procurement information. It also improves the efficiency of related operations to effectively manage collected information. In efforts to carry out logistics-related services through the digitization of logistics resources, the project for upgrading ammunition and materials information systems will be initially undertaken from 2007 to 2008. The equipment maintenance information system will be developed by 2008 as well as utilized in alignment and interface with logistics-related systems.

3. Promotion of the Digitization Environment

A. Expansion of Digitization Infrastructure

Digitization infrastructure consists of an information and communication network, computer systems, and information protection systems.

The information and communication network based on BTL will be set up at the level of an independent company by 2008. In order to accomplish this project, old cables installed in field units will be replaced with fiber-optic cables, and a WAN will be added. Furthermore, it is to be introduced a new technology, such as the VoIP, and establish an integrated internet network.

BTL (Build-Transfer-Lease): The BTL is a lease-type private funding project method. First, a private enterprise constructs a social infrastructure using its own fund. While transferring the ownership of the constructed infrastructure to the state or a local government, it leases the facilities to the state or a local government to recover the investment cost.

In alignment with the establishment of the Mega Center, the ROK military is concentrating its efforts on building an infrastructure that encompasses host and personal computers. The Mega Center has already established one pilot center for each Service and presently aims to integrate scattered information and communication offices, not to mention the host computers of individual Services into 61 information and communication centers. In addition, it is promoting the shift of the application system. Until 2012, the MND will build two to four Mega Centers through which integrated operations are available to all of the Services. Personal computers are being disseminated under the goal of achieving "one personal computer for each military personnel in charge." As of October 2006, the dissemination rate of personal computers within the ROK military stands at 95%, and the military intends to raise the rate to 100% by 2008.

VoIP: Voice over Internet Protocol

Under the information protection system, a practical manual for cyber security crisis confrontation is already published to cope with a cyber crisis step-by-step. CERTs, operated by units at the level of a corps or higher, have set up the basic system tackling cyber threats by developing an integrated security control system, computer virus prevention system, and military certification system. In addition, they will be organized to have more duties according to the establishment of the battlefield management information system and the defense integrated information management office. The MND plans on upgrading the information protection system for future NCW.

CERT: Computer Emergency Response Team

NCW: Network Centric Warfare

B. Promotion of Defense Digitization in Alignment with National Digitization Policy.

Since the MND developed the strategy to adopt a defense digitization policy appropriate for the national information technology infrastructure and technology policy, it has currently strengthened policy cooperation with the Ministry of Information and Communication. The MND is focusing on applying innovative information technologies to national defense in order to improve the efficiency of defense digitization and boost national IT competitiveness.

To achieve these goals, the MND signed an agreement with the ministry of information and communication in 2005 and carried out cooperation projects. For example, as a part of the introduction of "u-IT839" new technology, the military ammunition management system (based on the RFID and the F-15K finance management system) was introduced as a model project. In 2006, the MND promoted the u-ammunition management expansion project (based on the RFID) as well as knowledge DB establishment projects, such as the defense academic information system and defense document management system. It also built Linux-exclusive education places in all of the Services as a software model project.

▶ CIO workshop in 2006

In addition, the MND formed the digitization cooperation committee with the ministry of information and communication (May 2006). This committee determined 24 cooperation tasks in six fields, which have been promoted by the MND since the second half of 2006.

C. Digitization Education

CIO: Chief Information Officer

AF: Architecture Framework

CBD: Component Based Development

The MND annually holds the "CIO workshop" designed for team leaders or higher level officials in the defense digitization field in order to boost the digitization mind of military high-ranking officials.

To improve working-level capabilities in defense digitization, the MND opened courses for digitization project managers and supervision in 2001 as well as AF and CBD courses in 2006.

In addition, the MND is trying to utilize digitization technology to the utmost possible extent for civilian-administrative-military technological exchanges in the defense digitization technology areas and to apply high technology to defense digitization. At the same time, technological symposiums on defense digitization have been held to promote efficient defense digitization every December since 2000.

A cyber information room is going to be set up after the BTO. It aims at preventing soldiers from being cut off from the information society during the service period. This will help solve the so-called digital gap problem and increase employment opportunities for discharged soldiers by helping them get educational credits or professional certificates during the service period.

The MND plans to establish cyber knowledge information rooms using a mixture of cables and the Internet according to the environment of individual units in phases by 2008.

BTO (Build-Transfer-Operate):
The BTO is a kind of the private funding project method. After a private enterprise first constructs a social infrastructure using its own fund, the BTO transfers the ownership to the state or a local government, but has the right of operating the facilities for a certain period of time in order to recover the investment cost.

▶ View of a cyber knowledge information room

Section 5. Settlement of a New Barrack Culture

The paradigm of an advanced culture in the barracks we must pursue is to promote the environment in which it is possible to hold dreams and goals, respect human liberties, lead a fulfilling life and perform dutiful military service in order to build a harmonious and united military force of strength. Promotion of an advanced barracks culture will focus in the direction of the military acting as the guardian of peace and prosperity as well as assembling a strong military force while keeping the public's trust and love.

1. Vision of an Advanced Culture in the Barracks

New-age soldiers have matured through the development of IT and a society that places a high value on personal norms and creativity. Thus, a portion of soldiers may tend to feel culturally alienated and frustrated at the communal and authoritarian military life. Many may even go as far as viewing military service as wasted time.

Moreover, authoritarian command, conflict between the old and new generations, an undeveloped military environment, etc. still exist in present society and military service, giving rise to confused emotions towards the military. The conscience and societal separation between civilian and military impedes the preservation of firm military preparedness and the unification of society. Therefore, the improvement of a barracks culture is of utmost importance to developing national defense, possibly even the nation itself.

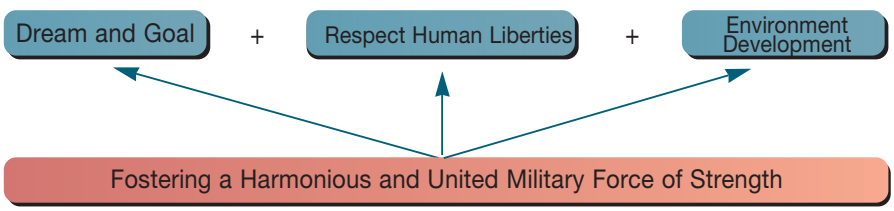
Consequently, the MND has created the "Barracks Culture Improvement Committee," which is a joint project by the relevant government authorities and the civilian specialists, providing an opportunity to identity the problems with life in the barracks and

epochally restructure the paradigm of a barracks culture.

The "Barracks Culture Improvement Committee" has stipulated the definition of "an advanced barracks culture" to be "a whole of a logical and democratic life in the barracks with which the foundation to win against the enemies is built up based upon respecting human liberties and holding public trust." Thus, the direction of "the improvement of a barracks culture" in order to be in line with the goals of defense reform and that of national development can be pointed into three goals: "A military that has dreams and goals," "a refreshing military that respects human liberties," and "a family-like military that allows individuals to focus on their missions."

The paradigm of an advanced barracks culture we must pursue should be as seen in Figure 5-26. As the figure shows, the paradigm is to hold dreams and goals, respect human liberties, and create an environment in which a fufilling life and dutiful military service are possible. A harmonious and united military force can be fostered through these.

〈Figure 5-26〉 Paradigm of a Advanced Barracks Culture



To realize this paradigm, the promoted goals of an advanced barracks culture are to convert officers' awareness, create an environment for self-development, accept a plethora of cultures, respect human rights, improve the environment, etc. Through the achievement of these goals, the advanced barracks culture's vision is creating a "military that people want to attend, and send."

The MND has articulated these in the "Defense Reform 2020" as long-term, core tasks for the "formation of the 21st century strong military." To facilitate the process, the MND formed and started the "Barracks Culture Improvement Committee" (June 2006) as an advisory

organization, including soldiers' parents as committee members.

2. Significant Improvement of Culture in the Barracks

A. "A Military with Dreams and Goals that People Want to Attend"

(1) Establishment of Military Personnel Value

▲ Captains to experience difficulties of newly-enlisted soldiers

To build the value of military personnel, a change in the officer's consciousness is judged as a primary necessity. Hence, education by class is bolstered. In addition, military personnel can undertake firsthand study to foster a democratic civilian frame of mind and the establishment of a "Value Research Center" is encouraged to systematically educate the military personnel psyche as well as value.

To induce a change in officer's consciousness, any higher ranking officer above a field grade officer attends a reinforced education session to cultivate a change of perspective during their duty training. Any unit officers below battalion-level are educated to enhance consulting capabilities in order to familiarize them to a "culture of respect and care."

By developing a communal lifestyle program and providing a learning experience connected to life in the barracks, military personnel can acquire a democratic awareness. Military status will be developed along with local community through participating in local cultural event programs associated with the local governments. Furthermore, education by professional civilian lecturers residing near the battalion-level unit will enhance moral education and contribute to a more integrated civilian-military relationship.

A special research center about barracks life for the establishment of a sound value system in service members will be introduced to study the special military characteristics, the division between the moral values of officers and enlisted men, the psychology of new age soldiers, the assessment of the value of behavior within the unit, etc. The behavioral scientific research results will continually be provided to commanders in order to create a sound military value system and cultivate a future-orientated leadership to ultimately raise the "true soldier."

(2) Building of Conditions for Self-Development

To allow the service members internet access, the MND has installed cyber knowledge information rooms by company/platoon units. As a result, the information gap during military service period is solved. Language studies as well as various licenses can be obtained. Moreover, by the association with the government's "Special Law of Juvenile Unemployment Solution," military human resources can be developed and working conditions improved to establish an infrastructure that promotes a higher quality of life.

▲ Use of a cyber knowledge information room

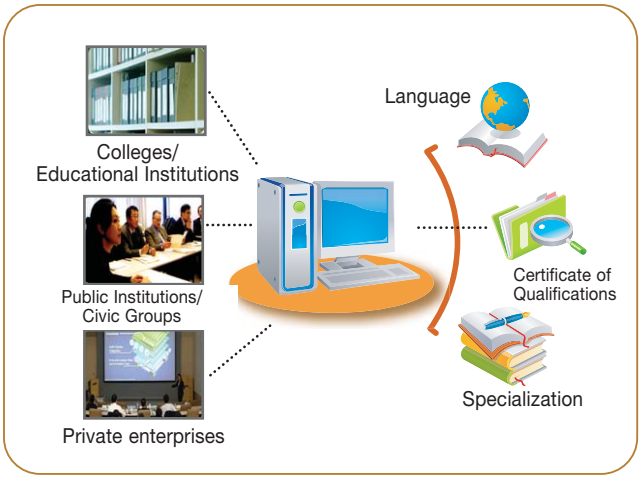
By the end of 2008, 50,000 internet PCs will be installed and utilized over three stages. At the same time, cyber counseling internet PCs will be supplied to captains/battalion commanders and chief master sergeants to provide opportunities for enlisted men to receive counseling for their concerns.

In the meantime, to allow for credit acquisition and completion of certificate courses, a military e-learning portal site has been opened. As seen with Figure 5-27, the site is associated with the Ministry of Education and Human Resources Development to organize and run the "Military e-Learning Studying Contents

Operation Committee." In addition, the establishment of cyber knowledge information rooms allows for a variety of content by universities and public institutions to be offered, such as language studies, employment, specialization/major, and college entrance. These subjects allow conditions for self-improvement and educational programs for the adaptation of service personnel to civilian society before discharge from service possible.

Furthermore, the "Military Qualification System Improvement Committee" was founded (October 19, 2005) to promote the expansion of the exemption for the written exams on national technical qualifications as well as national recognition for military experience. To achieve these means, legal registration is pursued.

〈[Figure 5-27〉 Establishment of the e-Learning System



Furthermore, to present to service members a military life with a goal, a "Military Qualification Support Center" is being prepared as the organ for the systematic and efficient management of a military certificate in order to overcome their isolation from society.

In the battalion-level living hall, constructed for the worthwhile use of personal free time, a library is under construction as part of the barrack facility modernization construction project. For company-level living halls in remote and distant areas, bookcases as well as 400 books or so were collectively supplied until the end of June 2006, and after 2007, 100 books will be supplied every year to satisfy the servicemen's cultural needs and contribute to cultivating their emotions.

B. Human Rights in the 'Army to Belong To'

(1) Legal and Institutional Provisions to Ensure Service members' rights

Through the enactment of the "Basic Law on Military Service," as a civilian wearing uniform, service members' basic rights (communication privacy, freedom of religion, right to ask for assistance in times of need, etc.) are ensured, and the duty of a combat soldier (loyalty to one's country, obedience to higher command, etc.) and the restrictions on personal rights (prohibition of group actions, limited political activities, prohibition of self-serving actions and holding an additional post, etc.) are to be specified and provided for in the law.

To set up and execute military policy on human rights and plans to increase military servicemen's personal rights, the MND Legal Affairs Management Bureau has created (since January 2, 2006) a "human rights team," and established a human rights officer position in each Service in order to supervise the protection of rights of subordinate units' service members and set up and the expansion of human rights plans.

In association with service members' assurance of human rights, the sympathy between the military and civilian are formed through civilian participation. The "Military Subcommittee" under the "Ombudsman of Korea" is to provide for the objectivity and professionalism of military difficulty settlement. By esrablishing these committees, all issues (medical, abuse, severe actions, etc.) are to be taken care of in the MND, subordinate units, as well as affiliated agencies.

(2) Guarantee of Self-Disciplined Life

By utilizing the internet to build a virtual web meeting system to increase interaction with family and friends as well as developing online games to introduce barracks life and provide opportunities for pre-enrolled men a chance to indirectly experience a barracks

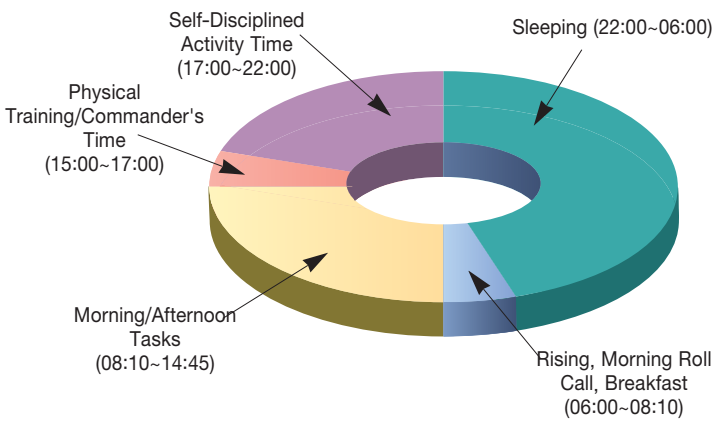
▲ Picture of the club activity

life, policies to publicly show barracks life are strongly promoted. Furthermore, with active communication with civilians and improvements of the going/sleeping out system to close the gap with the outside, detailed orientations on rules and policies ease adaptations into the unit.

The barracks life of servicemen is improved to aid to switch to a self-disciplined daily activity timetable as seen in Figure 5-28. Servicemen can voluntarily participate in creating a barracks culture, and after duty work, personal time is expanded until midnight to make self-development possible.

By distinctively dividing military life and personal time through applying the concept of "Going Home from Work," a liberating atmosphere can be induced while keeping military discipline and rules alive, and creating conditions for a self-disciplined lifestyle. However, those who fail to reach personal training standards are restricted in the amount of personal freedom they are given, thus

〈Figure 5-28〉 Improved Standard Daily Activity Timetable



putting responsibility on the individual for self-discipline.

(3) Development of an Advanced Leadership

To cultivate an advanced leadership, improving the system to appoint officers with potential and strengthening leadership

education for each rank by the educational institutes are necessary in order to allow officers to be in an environment where they are able to fully able to display their leadership. The selection method for appointing and utilizing superior candidates who show traits of leadership is distinguishing the core competencies by position of service and rank, and scientifically, as well as objectively, setting a standard for appointment. This system is to be developed and experimentally applied in 2007, to later be expanded.

From 2007, each Service will embody the qualities and abilities required for junior officers. Then, junior officers's virtues and leadership will be part of the candidate training courses, and leadership conforming with characteristics of units and ranks will be provided in regular courses during the period of refresher training. In addition, leadership mastery programs to provide the military officers with a systematic leadership education will be developed and applied.

According to the military's characteristics, the will and unit management philosophy of the commander are important. Using a specialized institute to introduce a system of examination, assessment and advice for commanders, and providing opportunities for the commanders under the regimental commander-level to prove their own worth while in office, will create a leadership of human respect.

Additionally, to ensure the full authority and command range of the squad leaders, the actualization of command activity expenses based upon the number of members in the squad will be implemented to improve an environment of command.

C. "A Family-like Military" That Can Concentrate on Duty

(1) Improvement of Personnel Management System to Sift out Unsuitable Conscripts

The strengthening of conscription examinations by the office of military manpower administration to psychological assessments by using tests in civilian hospital and clinical psychologists, as well as

▲ Scene of the physical examination

conscription using civilian doctors for conscription examinations, will increase public trust. Moreover, the implementation of the physical examination rule to professionally categorize patients with rare and incurable diseases as exempt from military service will continually enhance the capabilities of sifting out draftees unsuitable for service.

From 2007, advanced equipment for detailed physical examinations (such as CT, CPA, etc.) will be introduced and past medical history of conscript men will be used together with 3-D physical examinations and to discover mentally handicapped patients beforehand law. With the implementation of the "physical examination rules for servicemen," the system of conscription examination will especially seek to identity patients with rare and incurable disease. This will objectively and closely minimize the command burden because of personnel unfit for service.

Meanwhile, because the identification of personnel unfit for service within the first five days of enlistment by the current legal formalities is unrealistic, extending the period until the education of new servicemen will be put into operation. Also, unfit personnel spotted by the commanders during the training period are to be placed under observation for five weeks, as well as the medical inspection committee, and peer evaluation collected to evaluate the necessity to relocate or transfer the servicemen to other a public service to reduce the pressure in the attached unit. Furthermore, because the process of dealing with unfit personnel once placed into an attached unit is lengthy, ways to speed up the process, such as passing authority to deal with unfit personnel to the flag officer-level units, are under development.

(2) Establishment of Accident Control System

At the moment, despite the analysis of accident cases and attempts to prevent accidents by each Service, the incomplete computerization of related information and the lack of scientific analysis ultimately lead to inadequate systematic prevention plans. With the construction of an accident management system, which

holds and shares accident related material, units by rank can access accident related material with ease and use its benefits at any moment.

"Simple human nature inspection for the military" was developed, and now is open for opportune use by the field troops. A scientific management system will be installed through the improvement and application of a human nature inspection system jointly usable by each Service to differentiate each serviceman's aptitude, and hospital management utilizing a professional technique (the ROK Army's Vision Camp) to induce service adaptation.

To provide professional counseling on unfit personnel within the barracks, one civilian expert counselor or psychologist will be appointed to take the position of the professional counselling officer of servicemen's basic rights at the regiment-level unit to actively advise the commanders methods to prevent accidents and provide counseling services to the unit.

From August 2006, the MND and each military headquarters have been operating the "Accident Integrated Counterplan Headquarters" in face of critical accidents, and based upon the type of accident, a special investigation team is flexibly assembled and operated to scientifically analyze and accurately provide an official report with due haste. By maintaining professionalism, consistency and transparency and providing effective management for the accident's aftermath, the public's faith in the military is bolstered.

Vision Camp:
The vision camp is a military's own course to correct psychological problems. Psychological treatments are provided to a small group of service incongruent personnel identified in order to enhance their cognitive capabilities to solve their problems. The purpose of such treatments make the self-treatment possible, inducing the service adaptation. Right now, the vision camp caters to a group of 20 personnel, by every two months at the division level units. Generally, military religious officers, military doctors, and counselors in the attached areas act as lecturers. Those lecturers stay at the specific area in the division for five days in order to administer counselling and psychological treatments. When service incongruent persons are entered, they come with their guardians (enlisted soldiers) to ease potential feelings of alienation. If a person is judged to need additional treatment, the post-vision camp is held to provide extensive treatments. The post-vision camp is held every quarter.

(3) Improvement of Facilities in the Barracks

Improvements to the barracks facilities are focused on the transition of living halls to squad-level quarters with individual beds and provide a fairly large space for personal use in thought of the new-age servicemen's growth environment. Rather than maintaining the basic "accommodation" concept of the military living space, converting into a "dwelling" concept is the center of modifications. Facility improvement projects take into account military structure reorganization plans and national finance to

flexibly organize, realistically viewing the basic unit costs and maintenance budgets while primarily working to improve units in remote and distant areas and inferior facilities.

The goal and length of the improvement project are largely divided into two stages, the first stage is to reduce the length of the existing plan by one year in order to improve over 50% of the facilities in the barracks by 2009.

During the first stage, units such as GP and those out in remote and distant areas are first improved due to the unchanged placement of the buildings even after the reorganization of military structure. In the second stage, currently modernized units and units excluded from the first stage are improved, and the construction method is specified to allow recyclable buildings, which in turn allows flexible countermeasures in case of situation changes.

The "barracks facilities packaging" reflects the overall improvement requirements, starting from the GP buildings, in which central heating and cooling systems to basic facilities are further ameliorated. Bearing in mind the budget cost of units in remote and distant areas and integrated living halls of battalion-level units only the buildings and fixtures are prepared, the enhancements gradually put into effect starting from 2007.

3. Future Task

To earn the faith of the people and firmly establish the unity between the civilian and military, the MND is selecting and promoting the barracks culture improvement task as a key project for military innovation. In order for the effective promotion of this task, the MND will continually listen to criticisms of the people, service members, and experts. Through various advertising media, barracks culture improvements, results, and associated news will be actively be presented to the public, and with the Barracks Culture Improvement Committee, the Internet, and the press, the MND will hear the ideas and assessments from the people to reflect those in the future.

Chapter
6

National Defense with the People

Section 1. Enhancement of the People's Convenience

Section 2. Improvement of Conscription Administration

Section 3. Repatriation Effort for POW/MIAs

Section 4. Operation of an Environment-friendly Force

Section 5. Revitalization of National Defense Publicity

Section 1. Enhancement of the People's Convenience

The ROK military is making efforts to make things convenient for people in the area where its support is needed, but without causing damage to military operations and at the same time maintaining its flawless posture in executing its basic mission in normal times.

The ROK military implements its mission sincerely as "military of the people." For example, it actively supports the people by utilizing manpower, equipment and techniques of the military, offering high quality service to the people, pushing for an information disclosure system to enhance the transparency of the administration, satisfying the people's right to know, positively promoting a national disaster management policy, and reorganizing military facilities efficientry.

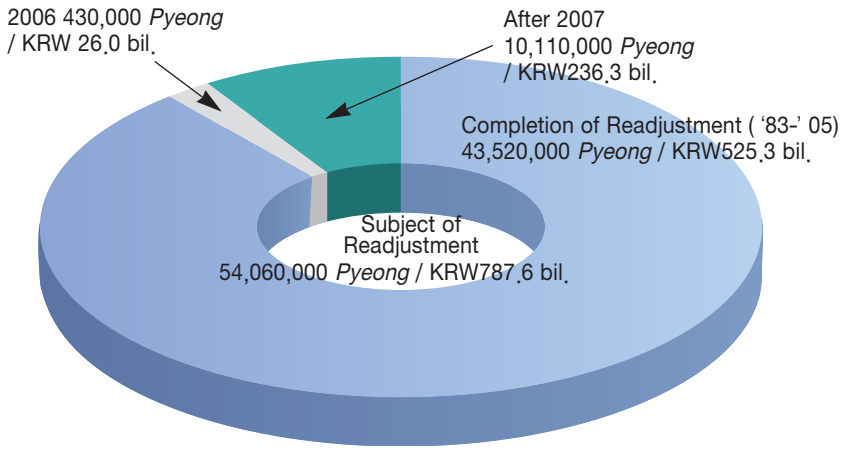
1. Management of Military Facilities

Effectively reorganizing military facilities, the ROK military is conducting an all-out effort not only to enhance the comport of its people, but also to secure military operations corresponding to national security and operational environment changes.

A. Readjustment of the Military's Using Private Land

The ROK military is constantly pushing for compensation and readjustment to the military's use of private land by securing the people's property rights. The MND is returning its unused private land purchasing properties that it needs to use continuously according to the "Act on Acquisition of Compensation for Land for Public Benefits Projects." The revenue for the compensation are allocated by means of a "special accounts budget for the military's use of private land" since 1995. Figure 6-1 shows the readjustment of private land used by the military.

〈Figure 6-1〉 Readjustment Situation of Private Land Used by the Military



Moreover, the ROK military is taking legal measures to acquire private land for military purposes by obtaining agreement from the landowner or purchasing the land beforehand.

B. Pushing for the Move of Military Facilities

The relocation of military facilities has been progressing continuously since 1966 to enhance the people's convenience, efficiently use the national land, achieve balanced development of urban areas, and develop modernized military facilities in line with the acquirements for military operations.

The MND has relocated 74 military facilities investing 1,579.0 billion won from 1998 to 2006, as shown in Table 6-2. In spite of the lack of funds, caused by the failure to dispose of lands due to the slow real estate market, the demand for the movement of military facilities has increased in the wake of the enforcement of the local autonomy system. In 2007, it is scheduled to continue with the additional movement of 30 military facilities by investing 269.0 billion won.

〈Table 6-2〉 Relocation of Military Facilities (1998-2006)

Region	Total	Seoul	GangWon	Gyeonggi	ChungCheong	Gyeongbuk	Gyeongnam	Jeonnam	Jeonbuk
Number of relocated units	74	10	14	11	6	10	17	5	1

C. Managemental Improvement of Military Facilites Protection Zone

▲ The MND's briefing for the improvement of the management of military facility protection zone ('06. 9)

The MND is pushing ahead with legislation enlisted "Protection of Military installations and Bases Act" by integrating existing protection acts such as "Protection of Military Installation Act," "Naval Bases Act" and "Military Air Bases Act."

The bill has redefined military-related protection areas as "military base and facility protection areas" and it has tried to resolve administrative problems and secure civilian property rights by simplifying related rules and procedures etc. Table 6-3 shows the specific contents of the military protection zone readjustment.

The new legislation introduces a system of land purchase, which enables the purchase of land from an owner, within the scope of the available budget, if the landowner inside the military protection zone chooses to sell the land.

This legislation allows for new buildings or the enlargement of structures inside military control and protection areas if they do not cause any impediment to military operations.

〈Table 6-3〉 Readjustment of Military Protection Zone

Classification	Current	Revision (Expect to be executed in the late 2007)
The front-line control and protection zone	within 15 km south of the military demarcation line	within 10 km south of the military demarcation line
The rear-line control and protection zone	within 500 m from the external boundary of the unit	within 300 m from the external boundary of the unit
The rear-line restraint and protection zone	within 1 km from the external boundary of the unit	within 500 m from the external boundary of the unit

The new law stipulates that local residents can put forward different views on the various administrative measures in connection with the military protection zone. It also supplements the process for claiming losses in case that the MND limits the use of various facilities in order to conduct military operations inside the military protection zone. On the other hand, the Minister of National Defense and the relevant commander in the region are

supposed to set up a management plan for the protection zone within 5 years to ensure systematic and consistent management of the military protection zone. The MND has classified the reserved military operations base for helicopters as a spare base for air operations and has given directions to designate one of these bases as a flying safety zone.

It has also changed the administrative process for constructing buildings inside a military protection zone. The MND has required citizens to consult with the military agency beforehand instead of having to make a mandatory report to the administrative agency.

D. Addressing Inconvenience for Local Residents

As a part of resolving the difficulties for local residents, the MND has adjusted the scope and time of the restrictive fisheries zone on the basis of regional characteristics.

It has continuously maintained the use of barbed wire on beaches classified as an urgent military operations zone, but it allows for the elimination of some of the barbed wire barriers on the bans of consultation with the local government.

▲ Reshaped beach barbed wire barriers entanglements in the East Sea

As part of the regulations governing the setting up of barriers, the MND utilizes a mobile barriers in wide open areas such as the golf courses.

Moreover, the MND is taking positive measures to consider civilian appeals. For example, it has been appointed a fire marshal who is a field commander to execute rescue missions as a standing member of the integrated regional defense committee.

2. Enforcement of the Support System for Disaster Management

A. Promoting Support for Disaster Management

It is expected that universal changes of weather such as a typhoon, flood, or heavy snow fall might cause a large scale natural disaster.

The MND is planning to promote disaster management policies to protect people's life and property.

The MND has reached agreement on disaster cooperation with the National Disaster Prevention and Countermeasures Headquarters (2005.8.22) and it has set up a cooperative system between the government and the military by designating military units which are able to support the local government.

▲ Specialist' s lecture on disaster management

Additionally, it has published a working manual for the MND in connection with the government's standard manual for crisis management (2005.11.29). It has been posted on the MND website and revised all the regulations in dealing with disaster prevention measures (2005. 11. 21).

The MND has arranged specialists to lecture commanders of various levels, soldiers and government officials in the MND and Gyeryongdae area who are in charge of the disaster relief effort so that they can provide active and systematic support for disaster management and people's relief in case that a disaster occurs.

▲ Sea surface training in search and rescue helicopter

The MND has set up disaster management curricula for military schools of various levels including the Korea National Defense University. In addition, it provides training in the special educational institute such as the Civil Defense Training Center and it also carries out various disaster management educational exercises.

In addition, the MND has constantly striven to promote disaster

management support work in various areas such as reinforcing disaster-related organizations and personnel of each service's headquarters, establishing a "disaster and security management item in the budget," opening a seminar on the promotion of disaster management for civilians, government and the military, enhancing the national defense disaster management information system, protecting the national infrastructure system and management of national resources.

B. Promoting Support for Disaster Recovery Activity

The ROK military continually maintains a posture of preparedness by managing search and rescue units and maintaining 210 briefing rooms for counter disaster operations nationwide.

The MND has conducted support activities for urgent rescue and damage recovery whenever a large scale disaster has occurred such as the typhoon "Megi" in 2004, tsunamis and earthquakes in Southern Asia, the mountain fire in the eastern part of Korea in 2005, the typhoon "Ewiniar" and the earthquake in Indonesia in 2006.

▲ Restoration of a greenhouse after the snowstorm

Table 6-4 shows rescue and relief activities by the ROK military over the last 5 years.

〈Table 6-4〉 Disaster Recovery Activities over the Last 5 Years

(As of Oct. 31, 2006)

Classification	Support		Recovery					
	Manpower (10,000 persons)	Equipment (pieces)	Life Rescue (No. of person)	House (No. of bldg.)	Farmland (ha)	Road/Bank (km)	Anti-epidemic (ha)	Others
2002	98	22,872	111	11,822	1,927	567	454	Anti-epidemic for red tide: 3,600 (ton)
2003	55	16,818	69	9,712	3,947	187	6,751	Burial of livestock: 83,000 (head)
2004	23	5,054	2	569	323	148	1	Burial of poultry: 449,000 (number)
2005	20	5,604	10	1,182	3,940	2,192	25	House recovery: 9,737 (bldg).
2006	38	14,553	128	3,363	471	481	147	Fine tree disease: 3,792 (tree)
Total	234	64,901	320	26,648	10,608	3,575	7,378	

C. Development of Disaster Management Support

The support of disaster management has involves prevention, emergency support and recovery, as well as in specialized disaster management education and integrated counter disaster training of civilians, governmental authorities and the military. First of all, the MND is planning to vitalize the education of disaster management in the military units by introducing such education at various levels of the military academy's regular curriculum. It also plans to provide education targeting the work level members of anti-disaster or emergency rescue teams, and to expand annual field lecturing tours by inviting disaster specialists to lecture.

▲ Military provides a supporting role in extinguishing a mountain fire in Yeongdong district

Regular educational training in units above the battalion-level units to prepare for disaster will take place. Participation in an integrated national disaster exercise which will include the civil, government, and military entities is being encouraged.

Moreover, protection of the national infrastructure system to maintain the state's function even though the public service is discontinued is given high priority, and it is intended to actively participate in large scale overseas emergency relief measures.

▲ Providing relief goods and equipments for South Asian earthquake and tsunami

The disaster management capability of the whole military will be enhanced. Units above the regiment-level are designing 19 working level manuals of various types and utilizing them. Local governments and designated cooperative military units have set up an emergency contact system as well as agreeing detailed procedures.

Furthermore, it is intended to designate additional disaster

relief units which will be in charge of islands or special disaster operations, and to increase manpower and organize each military unit's disaster management.

3. Reform of the Civil Petition Process

A. Reform of Information Disclosure

The information disclosure system is designed to enhance the transparency of administrative affairs and on the basis of the people's right to know. It intends to do this by offering the public agency's information possessed by the national organization and local governments bodies beforehand and by responding to the people's requests.

The MND is implementing "The Guidelines on Disclosure about National Defense Administration Information" to meet the government's information disclosure system. Additionally, the MND is offering important information such as major operational plans, and internal inspection results, and this can be accessed by viewing the MND's home page (www.mnd.go.kr). Futhermore it seeks to maximize information disclosure by establishing "minute guidelines about non-disclosure information."

If an applicant (the people, a corporate body, a group, a foreigner residing in South Korea) intends to acquire some specific information about the MND, one can request it through internet integrated information disclosure system (www.open.go.kr), as well as a mail service or a fax.

Information disclosure depends upon the guidelines on information disclosure and the MND is supposed to notify the claimant within 10 days after deciding whether it is going to disclose the information or not.

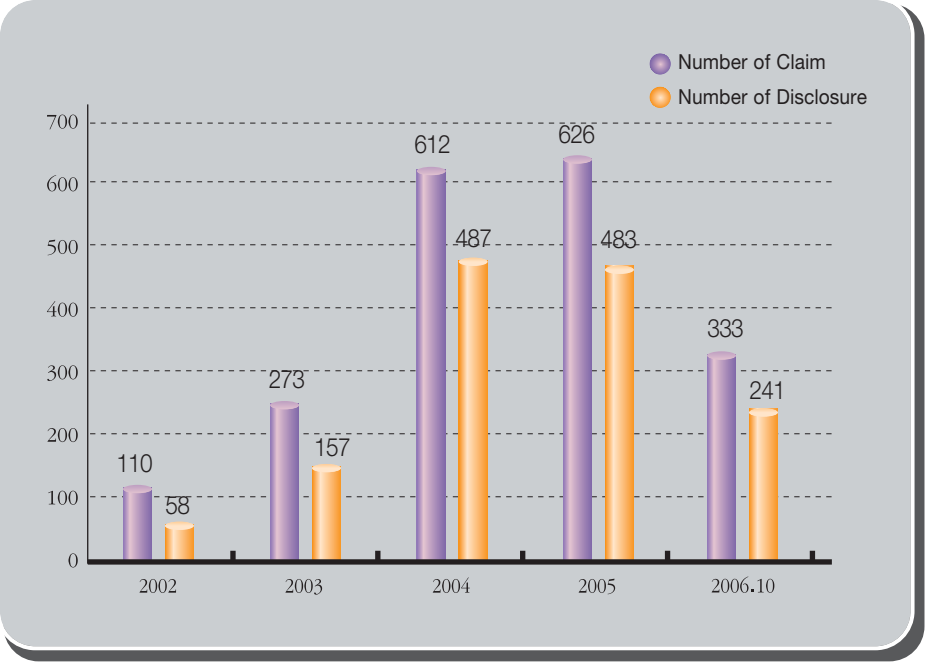
The information that is disclosed may be delivered to the claimant through mail, fax or e-mail.

Guidelines of Information Disclosure:
All the information that is claimed has to be disclosed in principle but secret, or classified information relating to national security, national defense, reunification, diplomatic relations, etc. and the information which can be critical to the protection of lives, body, and property of the people can not be opened to the public.

The number of applications for information disclosure have dramatically increased since 1998 due to a growing awareness of the people's rights in the wake of the passing of the "Official Information Disclosure Act." Figure 6-5 shows that the number of requests for information disclosure from the year 2002 to 2005 has increased over 5 times from 110 to 626, and the number of disclosures has increased about 8.3 times from 58 to 483.

A "Public Files Corner" is operated by the MND on its homepage (www.mnd.go.kr) for easy public access to information. The "Public Files Corner" offers 17,127 information

〈Figure 6-5〉 Present State of Information Disclosure



indexes, 7,420 important papers, 523 projects which are supposed to be announced in advance (2006. 10. 31). From July 2006, the MND has improved the function of its homepage and offers the original text of disclosed papers beside the indexes for the information.

For the future, the MND has put into action plans for a transparent national defense administration and it is also planning to guarantee the people's right to know by expanding the object of

information disclosure if circumstances allow except for classified information related to national security or national defense.

B. Reform of the Civil Petition System

With the advent of the 21 century's knowledge and information age, the MND is constantly pushing ahead with the improvement of the civil petition system to offer a high quality service corresponding with a growing awareness of people's rights and the level of people's consciousness.

To improve public satisfaction with the civil petition service, the MND does its best to determine the problems which cause inconvenience or discontent in all areas of national defense.

The MND published the "2005 MND Civil Petition White Paper" to offer a high quality service and to improve the civil petition system in 2005. It has established a petition portal system and put in place a civil petition administration infrastructure by standardization of the on-line civil petition process of the whole military unit and public institutions.

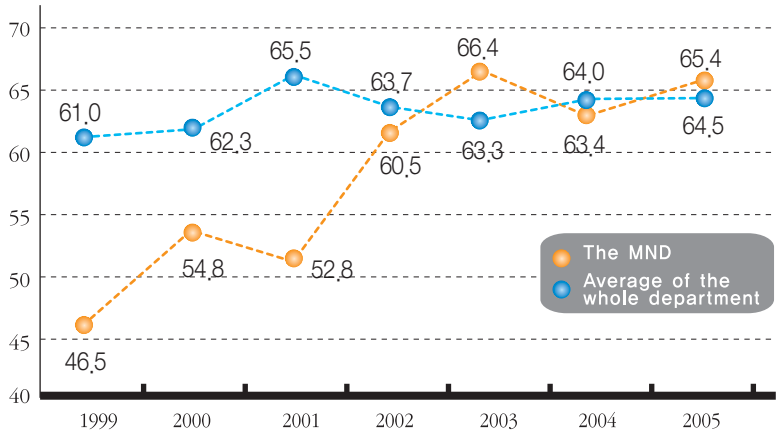
As a consequence, the MND scored 9th place out of 43 in a survey of satisfaction, which was commissioned by the Korea Institute of Public Administration over civil petitions in public institutions as shown by Figure 6-6.

In 2006, the MND pushed ahead with the improvement of the civil petition system to enhance "the people's satisfaction level by offering a high quality civil petition service." It has a policy vision of achieving an "advanced national defense civil petition administration act in common with the people."

The MND is promoting the development of its civil petition service by selecting 21 tasks divided into 7 fields as shown by Figure 6-7 .

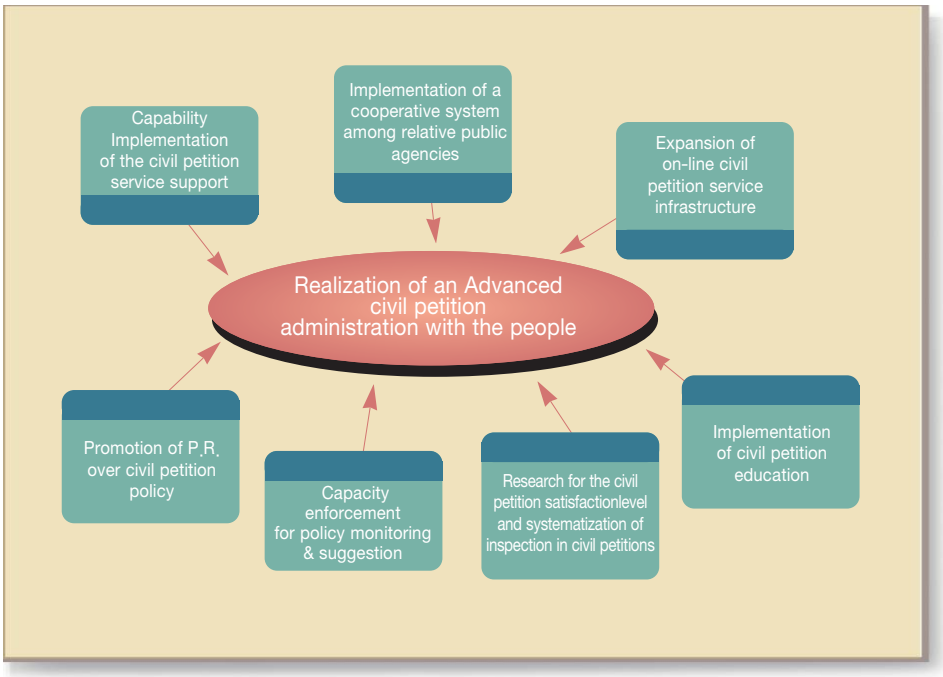
The MND actively participated in the "national on-line portal system" which is promoted by the Ministry of Government

〈Figure 6-6〉 Shift in the Satisfaction Level with the MND's Civil Petition Service
(Researched by the Office for Government Policy Coordination)



Administration and Home Affairs, so that people can easily deal with and suggest civil petitions related to national defense. It is scheduled to continue with the establishment of a "Call-Center for

〈Figure 6-7〉 Development Task of the MND's Civil Petition System



national defense petitions," in concert with the establishment of a "Call-Center for information about the government's civil petitions." The MND is constantly striving to enhance the people's satisfaction levels by improving the communication environment so that people can utilize the resources of the general civil affairs office with convenience and comfort.

4. Support for the People

In ordinary times, the ROK military is regularly engaged in activities to support people by utilizing equipment, techniques, and available military manpower where its assistance is needed.

The ROK military regularly supports rice planting and harvesting activities for the needy areas of the farming sector where timely sowing and harvesting is difficult due to the lack of workers in the busy farming season. Table 6-8 shows the present state of the military's support for farming for the last 5 years.

▲ A support activity for rice planting

The MND is offering technical support for the repair of farming equipment such as cultivators or rice planting machines, making rounds of the region where there is no service center for maintenance. This is achieved by organizing a "roving

〈Table 6-8〉 Present State of the Military's Support for Farming over the Last 5 Years

(As of Oct. 31, 2006)

Classification	Manpower (No. of persons)	Equipment (pieces)	Major Supporting Contents			
			Farming (square meters)	Machine repair (units)	Repair of farming road / waterways (km)	Medical Treatment (No. of persons)
2002	1,342,837	17,757	57,387	17,646	232	60,078
2003	575,141	7,672	28,193	7,659	450	12,201
2004	357,557	6,547	9,062	6,413	153	4,149
2005	155,466	2,556	2,484	2,365	76	8,083
2006	121,178	2,434	2,323	6,940	110	4,624
Total	2,552,179	36,966	99,449	41,023	1,021	89,135

repair team" for repairing farming equipment. Additionally, to keep abreast with structural change in the farm sector, it is focusing on basic facility expansion such as maintenance, and river improvement, rather than simple manpower support.

As part of the campaign to foster farm villages, the MND is actively supporting farming workers by "forming relationships between a particular military unit and a farming village." This contributes to the enhancement of national health by providing free medical treatment and helping to prevent epidemics.

Section 2. Improvement of the Administration of Conscription

The MND is constantly pursuing service improvement with new regislation including the "Military Service Act" to realize a fair, transparent and balanced conscription administration process.

It is striving to produce reliable conscription administration by implementing the efficient management of military resources and a fair and transparent conscription administration system so that it can create a climate for volunteering and create a good impression on its clients through service reform.

1. Enhancement of Fairness in Imposing Military Duty

The MND is pushing ahead with a system which can enhance the fairness, transparency and balance in conscription measures to promote an atmosphere for performing military service voluntarily.

First of all, it has reformed the physical examination regulations for conscription to enhance their fairness and accuracy. It has stipulated objectively and concisely the categories of medical conditions and the definition of physically or mentally handicapped people and it has also newly introduced an exclusive clause of exemption related to body (height or weight). For example a person who is below the height of 145 cm is supposed to be exempt from military service. In addition, it introduced a system for psychological evaluation to be carried out in a civilian hospital chosen by the conscript and it is also working on securing a clinical psychologist so as to strengthen psychological examinations.

In particular, the MND is operating a "warning system" to prevent specific individuals from evading military duty. It has identified 96,000 people who were targeted for close examination during 2006 by operating a warning system for those who were possible duty evaders, and inputting detailed information of

▲ Civil participatory committee talks for the development of the conscription administration process

physical examinations into a database.

The MND has introduced an internet reporting system to prevent the illegal evasion of military duty and it has designated an specific persons to check illegal internet sites related to military service.

It is also operating the "civil participatory committee for the development of conscription administration" and resolves complaints and objections of the physical examinee by the introduction of an ombudsman system in the physical examination process for conscription.

Meanwhile, the MND is scheduled to improve the military service system so as to secure fairness in military service and developing a strong and well trained military, utilizing its young human resources effectively while considering the ROK's reduction of its working population.

2. Revision of Related Laws

The MND is constantly revising related laws to promote a desirable military service culture. While it is abolishing the military register attachment system, where a person's service record is reported, the MND is pushing ahead with a revision of the law regarding the disclosure and reporting of a civil servant's military record. This revision may eliminate the system of reporting changes in changing a person's military record, or shorten the period of disclosure over the changed content.

The revised "Enforcement Decree of The Military Service Act" involves the following: dispatching a notification paper for conscription utilizing an electronic system; practicing early physical reexaminations for Grade 7 rated diseases in case of recovery; revision of the service related process to secure interest and rights of public service member; the specialist or skilled vocational technician's enhancement of rights and interest, and efficient revision of service management; and improving related text to enable the introduction of public veterinarian system. The revised

enforcement decree stipulates that the public service member can choose the service institute. Due to the new law, the relevant public service member who demands reconsideration by the serving institute for reason of illness, or mental or physical handicap, can deal with the problem with the attachment of a diagnosis for military personnel.

3. Research & Development of the Alternative Service System

The alternative service system refers to a public service in place of active military duty to utilize surplus human resources after filling the quota for servicemen on active duty. Currently, the kinds of alternative services in operation include the conversion service system, service as a specialist research member, skilled industrial technician, public sanitation doctor and public law officer, system of public service member, international cooperation doctor, etc.

Conversion service system: Converting soldier status by letting the soldier on service to serve for combatant police unit, or security instructor of the correctional institution, etc.

Recently the need for a general and fundamental review regarding alternative service is gaining momentum as a result of various requests for expanding cases for exemption from military service. Such groups include athletes, artists, and conscientious objectors.

For this reason the MND has been operating a "research committee for an alternative service system" since April 5, 2006 (tentative operation until the last of June 2007).

The research committee for an alternative service system is placing its focus on setting principles and standards for alternative service including cases involving foreign countries, and objections to military service on the grounds of religious belief or other reasons of conscience. It will consider whether the alternative service system is necessary or not. In addition to that, the MND is scheduled to suggest policy options by analyzing the results of a public opinion poll. Table 6-9 shows research priority by the area.

4. Expansion of Benefit to the Military Duty Performer

The MND is developing various systems to expand benefits to the process of people's fulfilling military duty. First of all, it is expanding a "self-choice system of military service." Conscripts

〈Table 6-9〉 Research Priority by the Area

Area	Specific theme	Relative Institute
Religiously (conscienstiously) motivated draft objection	· Case studies (Germany, Taiwan, Israel, U.S.A., etc.) · Its inter-relationship with the military soldier (military spirit, influence) · acceptance or rejection whether it may accept religiously (conscientiously) objection to the draft · Inter-relationship with existing alternative service system, etc.	National Assembly, Ministry of Justice, Ministry of Health and Welfare
General exemption case	· Understanding of the present state of alternative service (exemption) in the circles of culture, art, athletics, industry. · Plans for harmonization between military duty and the aspect of utilizing national human resources · Necessity of expansion / reduction of exemption · Principle of exemption, plan of improving principle, etc.	Ministry of Culture & Tourism, Ministry of Science and Technology, Ministry of Commerce, Industry and Energy, Ministry of Planning and Budget.
Opinion poll	· Research of the general public awareness (Commissioned to a specialized research institute)	Public Opinion Agencies
General analysis	· Analysis and judgement of research results, derivation of policy alternatives, policy suggestion	-

can choose the date and place of the physical examination as they please by submitting details through the home page of the Military Manpower Administration section.

The MND allows for recruits to undergo the physical examination in their home area, if requested through the internet five days before the relevant local Military Manpower Adminstration's appointed time and if there is a vacant post.

Additionally, the conscription date and the way of conscript decides which serving institute he will apply for has been changed from a monthly to a quarterly choice. Furthermore, the MND has expanded the opportunity of choosing the conscription date and serving institute to include those who have delayed the appointed conscription date. It even allows to choose a serving institute located in a nearby city, county, and ward where public service is possible near their residence.

The MND has expanded enlisted numbers to allow members to return to school in possible periods after serving the military service. They have joined the military with possible periods of return to school being January, February, July, August. The numbers joining the military stands at 52,000 in 2005 and 59,000 in 2006.

But there is a limit to the amount of expansion to avoid problems with the management of human resources in the military.

In addition, the MND has abolished the license system for foreign tourism and subsequent notification after return from an overseas trip so that the military conscript can go on an overseas trip freely. This has been achieved by introducing an application system where Korean citizens subject to military duty can extend the period of an overseas tour through the internet.

▲ Welcoming ceremony for the enlisted

Section 3. Repatriation Effort for POW/MIAs

The ROK government is actively pursuing the repatriation of its POWs from the point of view of "national duty and obligation."

The government has constantly raised the ROK's POWs issue through international organizations or Inter-Korean talks, but there still remains difficulties in investigating the actual state of the ROK's MIA in North Korea.

Thereby, as a realistic policy option, the government actively continues with the exchange of letters and reunions regarding those POWs as its separated family members in a broad sense.

1. The Present State of ROK's POW / MIAs

During the Korean war, there were three occasions when mutual exchanges of POWs (prisoners of war) occured from April 1953 to January 1954 between United Nation forces and Communist forces. At the time, the UN HQ counted the number of the ROK's MIA as 82,000 individuals, but the number of MIAs finally released by the communist party to the UN is only 8,343 persons.

Accordingly, it is estimated that most of the ROK military's POWs who remain in North Korea do so against their wishes. The U.N's HQ constantly demanded North Korea repatriate the ROK's POW through the Military Armistice Commission until early 1960. (But the issue is yet to be resolved, given North Korea's adherence to the position that there are no ROK's POWs being detained in North Korea). Amid these claims, by returning the ROK's POW second lieutenant Cho Chang Ho, the issue of the ROK's POWs has become a matter of primary concern. The MND disclosed 19,409 names of MIA during the Korean war on October 1997 through checking military registers and notification

from MIA's family members. It is estimated that the list contains a lot of ROK's POWs still detained in North Korea.

According to defectors from North Korea and 65 returned ROK's POWs, it is estimated that 5545 members of the ROK's POW still exist in North Korea as of October 2006.

2. The ROK's Effort to Resolve

The ROK government has repeatedly brought up the repatriation of the ROK military's POW by all possible means in fulfilling the state's obligation and duty in the international community. It also has put all possible efforts into resolving the POW issue fundamentally by taking the opportunity to raise the issues during Inter-Korean negotiations.

As a realistic alternative, the ROK government is actively pushing ahead with the reunion of seperated family members and letter exchanges. The ROK military's POW issue is treated as a reunion of separated family members.

As of today, 11 members of the ROK military's POW and their dispersed family members have met again at a reunion event of separated family members. If the Inter-Korean relationship is improved after the completion of the reunion facility for separated family members in the Mt. Keumgang region in the future, it is expected that more separated POW family members' reunions might be realized.

As the number of ROK's POWs staying in third countries is increasing, the ROK government has adopted relevant laws and systems and is preparing an organization which will take charge of POW issues in order to support their rapid repatriation and stable settlement. Due to the government's efforts, the repatriation of POWs and their family members in third world countries is on the increase and the government is supporting the returned POWs in their

▲ Retiring ceremony of the ROK' POW

domestic settlement by supporting living expenses, pay and pensions which are guaranteed by the law of POW treatment proclaimed on 29th January 1999.

In addition, the MND conducts informal talks and field trips to the security site inviting returned POWs and their family members. The MND will implement a new law addressing some of the problems in the current law regarding POW treatment. The new law for the "POW's Repatriation and Their Treatment" is designed to offer free medical support by abrogating the current law from Jan. 1, 2007. In the mean time, the government will continue with the repatriation of the third world stationed ROK's POWs and their family members. It will continue to raise the repatriation issue with the North Korea through various means at the government level. In addition, it will map out various policy options for the stable domestic settlement of POWs and their family members.

Section 4. Operation of an Environmentally-friendly Force

The activity of environmental preservation is very important because it is directly related to the preservation of national territory where people live and work.

Accordingly, the ROK Military is actively implementing military management policies based on environmental protection such as conducting periodical clean up activities and utilizing natural resources as much as possible to refrain from damaging the environment of military posts.

1. Development of the Scheme of Environmental Protection

The MND is training environmental specialists and expanding the environmental management organization to undertake environmental protection work efficiently. To this end, it is designing measures to acquire specialists and setting up the basis of an environmental organization which will act through each Service and affiliated military units.

Table 6-10 shows the requested staffing levels for the environment preservation departments. The MND is developing an education and training system, and promoting the management of assigned positions by status to improve the specialized skills of

〈Table 6-10〉 Staffing of Environment Preservation Department

(Unit: No. of persons)

Total Manpower Needs	Drafted Manpower	%	After 2007
1,609	1,496	93	113

related personnel.

In addition, the MND will develop the instructions and guiding principles to harmonize them with 91 relevant laws including "Framework Act on Environmental Policy." and defense-related regulations.

In particular, the ROK military has accelerated its efforts to improve the environment by developing an environmental management model which harmonizes with the characteristics of each military unit. This environmental management model has been independently managed by each service since 1999.

2. Expanding the Project of Prevention of Environmental Pollution

▲ Measurement of vehicles' exhaust gas (1 time in half a year)

The ROK military is enforcing measures to dispose waste water efficiently by commissioning outside facilities to dispose of polluted water, which can amount to more than 200 tons a day. Disposal is linked to the local government facilities. Establishing facilities for the prevention of water contamination was achieved by acquiring 2,367 waste water disposing facilities by the end of 2005.

Just as shown in Table 6-11, it is scheduled to acquire a total of 7,420 environmental facilities including facilities for the prevention of land and air pollution at an early stage and to constantly repair environmental facilities to improve wornout equipment and comply with the reinforced environmental principle.

〈Table 6-11〉 Present State of Acquiring the Basic Environmental Facilities

Classification		Total needs	by 2005	%	2006	Since 2007
Environmental facilities	number	7,420	4,747	64	458	2,215
	100 million won	6,683	3,815	57	510	2,358

The ROK military is also implementing the management of waste and recycling. The waste of the military is dealt with by the relevant local government and it is incinerated by military trash burner only if a commissioned disposal is impossible. Meanwhile, the ROK military is setting up plans and pushing ahead with comprehensive countermeasure policies through simultaneous investigation of buried waste.

It is recycling designated waste such as oils, acids, and alkalis to the maximum and it commissions a specialized agency if recycling is impossible. As of the later part of 2006, it is operating 25,000 of the separated collection facilities in order to vitalize the recycling of resources. Table 6-12 shows the military's waste disposal as of 2005.

〈Table 6-12〉 Military Wastes' Disposal as of 2005.

(unit: ton)

Classification	Wastes Volume	Disposal			
		Commissioned disposal	Recycling	Self-Disposal	Others
Total	147,918	99,992	38,318	3,218	6,327
Life wastes	79,923	64,394	12,944	2,484	101
Food wastes	26,826	1,449	24,580	797	-
Designated Wastes	9,812	7,053	756	-	2,003
Construction Wastes	31,357	27,096	38	-	4,223

3. Enforcement of the Preservation of the Natural Environment

The ROK military performs military training or military operations and it is also protecting the natural environment at the same time.

The supporting project of regional environmental clean up activities by military units reflects the opinions of residents' in the the government and military regional environment committee. more than 2 million soldiers are performing environmental clean up activities at military compounds, training camps, rivers, and parks, collecting more than 16,000 tons of waste every year.

The ROK military is proceeding with measures to protect ecological systems by utilizing the ecological & natural survey pictures published by the Ministry of Environment.

The ROK military also enforces the protection of the natural environment in the region, such as in the special preservation areas designated by the "Natural Environment Conservation Act." It also cooperates with relevant agencies with the objective of conducting academic research and investigating matters related to the region.

Furthermore, it is devising measures for the protection of wild animals. In 2005, the ROK military has actively participated in wild animal protection activities through the operation of guard post (731), the removal of poaching equipment such as nooses or traps (3,267), and by scattering feed to wild animals (284 tons) in the winter season.

▲ Under water clean-up activity in the Han River

▲ Noose sweeping activity at Cheonggei mountain by the Air Force 15th Aviation group

Section 5. Revitalization of National Defense Publicity

The MND is disclosing the content and processes of major national defense policies to establish sympathy and direct understanding about major defense policies. It is constantly publicizing an 'open national defense' through an active collection of various level of public opinion.

The purpose of the national defense publicity is to mobilize people's support by informing them of the true image of the military. At the same time it is enhancing friendly relationships by publicizing the peace-oriented ROK military's national defense policy to the neighboring countries and deterring North Korea's provocation by informing them of the ROK military's firm countermeasure postures.

In addition to that, the MND is establishing an evaluation system of national defense publicity in order to support a successful drive and enhance the qualities of national defense. Meanwhile, it is implementing a system through which various civilian experts can participate in the process of national defense policy from drafting to evaluation.

1. Revitalization of National Defense Publicity and Arrangement of a System

A. Revitalization of National Defense Publicity

The MND conducts regular briefings of it's major policies. At the same time, it offers various resources regarding national concern and current issues regarding national defense by utilizing military media for publicity such as the national defense focus, the journal of national defense, military broadcasting, and the national defense daily news paper.

The military TV broadcasting system, established on December 1, 2005, has provided dramatic development in national defense publicity by providing a specialized TV channel for national defense through satellite and local cable broadcasting. The MND is steadily promoting on-line publicity to meet the demands of an information-oriented society.

The MND is revitalizing the publicity of national defense policies by redesigning its home page to conform to the culture of the modern netizen. It provided a further service to the people by up-loading publicized sources to "MND news," which is an internet newspaper.

In addition to that it is promoting a friendly image of national defense by operating a mini-home page at Cyworld.

Furthermore, the MND is sending an E-mail, which contains policy sources requested by the people or the relevant unit concerned which is related with national defense through PCRM of the client management concept. It provides an customized two-way publicity activities by collecting and reflecting public opinion of policy.

PCRM:
Policy Customer Relationship Management

The MND is expanding its shared values of security by planned publicity events, such as a briefing session concerning the national defense policy and field trips to security sites, by targeting leaders in various fields, like policy clients, people in press circles, academic leaders, art performers, NGOs, veterans, etc.

▲ Conversation between the Minister of National Defense and Netizen (Sep. 29, 2005)

In addition, the MND is doing its best to promote an understanding of the need for "strong national defense with the people" by promoting the national defense publicity service for the people such as juvenile training for the fatherland defense and various experiences in the barracks, producing films for movies and TV, supporting local cultural events and improving the process of gaining access to the security tour site.

B. Establishment of a System to Evaluate National Defense Publicity

The national policy in the 21st century can be successfully realized by the consensus of the people. Hence, the individual person in charge of policy needs a responsible attitude from policy drafting to publicity in order to support a successful drive and enhance the quality of the national defense policy.

So far the publicity for national defense has been promoted in a way that policy and publicity have been kept separate. This has caused some confusion or misinformation. Therefore, the MND reformed the understanding and culture inside the organization regarding policy and publicity. It now has in place a system to evaluate publicity so as to produce a new culture of communicating policy to the public.

The purpose of the evaluation system of national policy publicity is to reflect the success score of the team leader and members by applying the achievement management system, and its aim is to check and reflect whether public policy has been followed over the whole process in promoting the concerned task from the level of policy draft and decision making level, to policy executing level.

2. Civilian Expert Participation in the National Defense Policy Development

A. The Operation of the National Defense Policy Advisory Committee

The MND is collecting and reflecting the opinion of relevant specialists who are knowledgeable and experienced by operating the National Defense Policy Advisory committee since 1981, which consists of various experts such as leaders from academic circles and the press. It is promoting consensus and mutual understanding between civilians and the military regarding the national defense policy.

The "National Defense Policy and Advisory Committee"

consists of 11 sub-committees dealing with different policy areas. It is supposed to hold meetings annually. Each subcommittee meets more than once each quarter to consult on current issues of national defense. If an urgent issue arises, it can be convened at any time.

Apart from formal meetings, the National Defense Policy Advisory Committee operates by various other means such as visits, letters, telephone conversation, e-mails. Table 6-13 shows each sub

〈Table 6-13〉 Present State of the National Defense Policy Advisory Committee

Policy publicity(10)			Reform Planning (7)		Personnel Welfare (8)		Resource Management (9)			Joint Chiefs of Staff	Total
Policy	International affairs	TI & E	Plan & Budget	Judicial affairs	Personnel management & welfare	Mobilization	Military demands	Facilities	Information & Planning		
4	3	3	4	3	6	2	4	2	3	14	48

committee's present state of the constitution

Acting upon government policy to expand the social participation of women, as of 2006, the MND organized appointed 10 female specialists as advisory commissioners and will expand the percentage of women gradually taking into account the peculiarity of the of sub-committee.

By commissioning numerous local figures and persons who belong to NGOs, it is exerting an effort to reflect various opinions of a wider section of society.

B. Operation of the MND's Self-Evaluation Committee

The MND has depended upon internal evaluation for work that has been completed in the MND so far. However, it has opened up the whole sphere of national defense to meet the demand of a new generation by taking a decisive step to ensure the credibility of the evaluation of its work.

Hence, the MND operates its own evaluation committee, and the committee is managed by five sub-committees such as a department of major policy, financial achievement, organization, personnel management, and information.

It considers the self-evaluation plan over the relevant year, inspection of half term achievement, general evaluation over the achievement and checking policy if necessary. The self-evaluation committee consists of thirty civilian experts. The committee members are comprised of professors, civilian researchers, etc, irrespective of the gender.

Table 6-14 shows the present state of the MND's self-evaluation committee

〈Table 6-14〉 Present State of the MND's Self-evaluation Committee

(Unit: No. of person)

Department	Major Policy	Financial Achievement	Organization	Personnel Management	Information	Total
Number of persons	7	6	5	5	7	30

Thus, the ROK military is placing considerable effort on educating people about national defense so as to optimize civil-military relations while fulfilling the military's basic duty.

Appendices

1. Military Capabilities of Neighboring Countries
2. Comparison of Economic Indices of South and North Korea
3. North Korean Annual Military Expenditures (1991-2006)
4. Chronology of Major Events Related to the North Korean Nuclear Issue
5. North Korea's Missile Development and Specifications
6. The National Defense Reform Act
7. The 38th ROK-US SCM Joint Communique
8. Status of the UN Peacekeeping Operations
9. Status of the Dispatch of ROK Troops
10. Comparison of Military Expenditures of Major Countries
11. Annual Government and Defense Budgets
12. Comparison of Military Capabilities between South and North Korea
13. Combined/Joint Training and Exercises
14. Chronology of Inter-Korean Military Talks
15. The 37th ROK-US SCM Joint Communique
16. Major International Arms Control Regimes / Organizations
17. Organization of the Ministry of National Defense (MND)

[Appendix 1]

Military Capabilities of Neighboring Countries

◐ Total

Classification	US	Russia	China	Japan
Total Troops	1,473,960	1,037,000	2,255,000	240,812

◐ Army

Classification	US	Russia	China	Japan
Troops	502,000	395,000	1,600,000	149,571
Divisions (Reserve)	10(8)	36(15)	59	10 * 4 brigades and 1 mixed corps separately
Tanks Light tanks Reconnaissance tanks Armored vehicles	7,620 6,719 96 14,900	22,950 150 2,000 24,990	8,580 1,000 – 4,500	950 – 90 950
Towed artillery Self-propelled artillery MLRS Mortars	1,547 2,087 830 2,066	12,765 6,010 4,350 6,100	14,000 1,200 2,400 100	480 290 110 2,000
Anti-tank guided weapons	Dragon: 19,000 Javelin: 950	Various types of AT series but quantity unknown	7,200	650
Surface-to-air missiles	1,281	2,460	284	800
Helicopters	4,597	1,700	364	485
Aircraft	298	–	4+	15

◐ Navy

Classification	US	Russia	China	Japan
Troops	376,750	142,000	255,000	44,928
Submarines (strategic)	80 (16)	54 (13)	69 (1)	16
Aircraft carriers	12	1	–	–
Cruisers	27	6	–	–
Destroyers	49	15	21	45
Frigates	30	19	42	9
Corvettes	21	88	331	7
Mine sweepers	26	60	39	31
Landing vessels	40	21	56	8
Landing craft	200	80	50	–
Support vessels	35	436	163	27
Cargo vessels	26	–	?	8
Reserve transportation	127	–	?	–
Fighters	752	266	200	–
Helicopters	608	120	51	107 (P-3C 96)
Marine divisions	3	1	2 (Brigades)	–

◐ Air Force

Classification	US	Russia	China	Japan
Troops	379,500	170,000	400,000	46,313
Long-range bombers	205	116	222	–
Reconnaissance aircraft	261	160	54	27
Command aircraft	30	20	–	–
Fighters	3,200	1,500	1,200	360
Transport aircraft	1,025	354	296	42
Tankers	659	20	10	–
Training aircraft	1,516	980	493	170
Helicopters	198	848	80	–
Civilian reserve aircraft	927	1,500	?	–

※ *Source: The Military Balance 2005-2006 (London : IISS, October 2005) /Defense of Japan 2006 (Tokyo: Japan Defense Agency, Aug. 2006)*

※ *Total troops of the US are troops to include 175,350 of the Marine Corps and 40,360 of the Coastal Guard*

※ *Total troops of Russia are troops to include 80,000 of strategic forces and 250,000 of supporting units*

[Appendix 2]

Comparison of Economic Indices of South and North Korea

Classification	South Korea		North Korea		Comparison of South Korea over North Korea	
	2003	2004	2003	2004	2003	2004
GNI ($ billions)	608.6	681.0	18.4	20.8	33.1 times	32.8 times
Per Capita GNI ($)	12,720	14,162	818	914	15.6 times	15.5 times
Economic growth rate (%) by GNI	3.1	4.6	1.8	2.2	–	–
Total trade volume ($ billions)	372.64	478.31	2.39	2.86	155.9 times	167.2 times
Total Population (millions)	47.85	48.08	22.52	22.71	2.1 times	2.1 times

※ GNI (Gross National Income): since 1993, such international organizations as the UN, 3 IMF and major industrialized nations have been using GNI instead of GNP. (GNI ≒GNP)

[Appendix 3]

North Korean Annual Military Expenditures (1991–2006)

Figures in parenthesis represent military expenditures officially announced by North Korea

Unit: $ billions)

Year	GNI (as announced by the Bank of Korea)	Total Budget (as announced by North Korea)	Military Expenditure	Ratio (%) of Military Expenditure to GNI	Ratio (%) of Military Expenditure to Total Budget	Exchange Rate (1 US dollar: North Korean won)
1991	22.9	17.17	5.13 (2.08)	22.4	29.9 (12.1)	2.15
1992	21.1	18.45	5.54 (2.10)	26.3	30.0 (11.4)	1.13
1993	20.5	18.72	5.62 (2.15)	27.2	30 (11.4)	2.15
1994	21.2	19.19	5.76 (2.19)	27.2	30 (11.5)	2.16
1995	22.3	20.82	6.24	28	30	2.05
1996	21.4	–	5.78	27	–	2.14
1997	17.7	9.10	4.78	27	52	2.16
1998	12.6	9.10	4.78 (1.33)	37.9	52 (14.6)	2.20
1999	15.8	9.23	4.78 (1.35)	30	51 (14.6)	2.17
2000	16.8	9.57	5.0 (1.37)	29.8	52 (14.3)	2.19
2001	15.7	9.81	5.0 (1.41)	31.8	51 (14.4)	2.21
2002	17.0	10.01	5.0 (1.49)	29.4	50 (14.9)	2.21
2003	18.4	11.25	5.0 (1.77)	27.4	44.4 (15.6)	2.21
2004		2.51	(0.39)		(15.6)	139.0
2005		2.90	(0.46)		(15.9)	140.0
2006		2.94	(0.47)		(15.9)	143.0

※ The amount of military expenditures during the period from 1995 to 1997 represents estimated expenditures at the average ratio of 27% to GNI.
※ For 2003, The exchange rate before economic Improvement measures on July 1, 2002 is applied.
※ After 2004, the estimation of military expenditures in North Korea was restricted because of sharp increases of North Korea's exchange rate. The amounts announced by North Korea were only presented.

Chronology of Major Events Related to the North Korean Nuclear Issue

Date	Major Details
Jan. 29, 2005	A spokesman for DOS, Rich Boucher's Briefing – We expressed clearly our position that we are ready to resume the six party talks early without any preconditions. The US position is unchanged and we are waiting for the talks with North Korea to resume. – I think fundamentally it is time that North Korea returns to the six party talks to resolve nuclear issues on its own and prevent internal isolation.
Feb. 10	The North Korean Foreign Ministry announces that it suspends its participation in the six party talks indefinitely and makes a declaration that it possesses nuclear weapons.
Feb. 21	Kim Jong-il mentions the following at the time of receiving Chinese DG of Foreign liaison office, Wang Jiarui – To maintain denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula and stress a peaceful solution through dialogue – To make no opposition to the six party talks and give his word to make efforts for the success of the talks – To schedule to attend the six party talks when the circumstances for the six party talks are ripe in a united effort of relevant countries
Feb. 28	US DOS published annual report on human rights. – To prescribe North Korea as one of the most coercive and cruel regimes and illustrate examples of comprehensive infringement of human rights
Mar. 23	Chinese President Hu Jintao proposes three principles on North Korea's nuclear issue in an interview with Prime Minister Pak Pong-ju during his visit to China. – Three principles: ① to maintain denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula, ② to resolve North Korea's matters of concern, ③ maintain peace and stability in accordance with common interests
Mar. 30	Former Assistant Secretary of State, Mr. Gallucci states that the transfer of nuclear materials is the time for military attack against North Korea. – In the case that North Korea transfers nuclear materials to the outside, it would be the time for the US to review a military attack against North Korea.
Apr. 25	The North Korean Foreign Ministry claims that it is a declaration of war against North Korea to put forward North Korea's nuclear issue to the UNSC.
Apr. 28	President Bush's press interview on the 100th day after inauguration – Kim Jong-il who lets the North Korean people starve, and maintains large scale concentration camps, is a very dangerous person. I don't know if North Korea retains the capability to carry nuclear weapons but I think it is better to involve other countries like China to deal with a tyrant such as Kim Jong-il.
May 9	US Secretary of State, Rice has an interview with CNN. – North Korea is a country with sovereignty and the US has no intention to attack or invade North Korea. – Six party talks are the best frame for North Korea. The US has had talks with North Korea and continues to mention no intention of attacking or invading it. – There will be many things favorable to it if North Korea returns to the talks. The participants to the six party talks will provide it with multilateral security assurance and energy when North Korea abandons its nuclear program
May 11	The spokesman for the North Korean Foreign Ministry claims it has completed the work towithdraw spent fuels. – Recently, our agency in charge has successfully completed withdrawal of 8000 spent fuel rods out of a 5 MWe graphite reactor.
Jun. 11	The ROK-US summit agrees to move ahead with promoting US-North Korea relations in case North Korea gives up its nuclear program.

Date	Major Details
Jun. 17	When the Chairman of National Defense Commission, Kim Jong-il meets special envoy, Chung Dong-young, he suggests the "return to the six party talks in case of normalizing relations with the US."
Jul. 12	Minister of Unification, Chung Dong-young, announced a "grave proposal to NorthKorea" - If North Korea agrees to the dismantlement of its nuclear program, the ROK will provide 2 million kw of electricity.
Jul. 26	Opening of the 4th round of the six party talks
Aug. 7	The 4th round of the six party talks is adjourned.
Aug. 9	North Korea's No-dong newspaper maintains "the possibility of realizing denuclearization if a peace mechanism is established." - At the time the armistice system is converted to a peace mechanism, US hostile policy toward North Korea, which is the fundamental cause of the nuclear issue, and nuclear threat will disappear and naturally proceed to the realization of denuclearization.
Aug. 29	The spokesman for the North Korean Foreign Ministry proposes the esumption of the six party talks on Sept 12. - North Korea takes the position to hold the 2nd stage of the six party talks on the week of Sept. 12 begins "as the dust of war settles down to some extent." It is our maximum generosity to show under present circumstances.
Sep. 15	US Department of Treasury freezes the North Korean accounts in the BDA.
Sep. 13-19	Opening of the 2nd stage of the 4th round of the six party talks. Adoption of the Joint Statement
Sep. 20	The spokesman for the North Korean Foreign Ministry made a statement (North Korean Central News). - The most serious confrontation issues between the DPRK and the US is the issue regarding the right of peaceful nuclear activities, specifically, the matter concerning the provision of the Light Water Reactor to the DPRK.
Oct. 24	The spokesman for North Korean Foreign Ministry announced the participation in the six party talks in early November. - We will go to the 5th round of the six party talks on a date in early November as agreed, and have no change in our position to realize the denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula through dialogue.
Oct. 27	North Korea's Deputy Ambassador to UN, Han Song-ryol, addresses ICAS. - The US demands that North Korea declare its nuclear program voluntarily, but the North Korea cannot accept it. - As North Korea's nuclear deterrence is defensive, we cannot give it up as long as the US threat does not disappear.
Nov. 9-11	The 1st stage of the 4th round of the six party talks
Nov. 15	The spokesman for the WFP announces the suspension of support to North Korea. - Food materials and technical support to 19 food processing plants in North Korea are all suspended, and there is no more additional provision from the WFP.
Dec. 3	The spokesman for the North Korean Foreign Ministry urges the holding a bilateral meeting to lift financial sanctions. - The lifting of financial sanctions is a fundamental premise for establising an atmosphere for implementation of a Joint Statement, and an essential request for the progress of the six party talks.
Jan. 18, 2006	Kim Gye-gwan and Hill meet together. - Agree to the need for early resumption of the six party talks but all participants maintain their existing positions
May. 7	The contact in New York between the US and North Korea - Reconfirm non-participation of North Korea without a breakthrough in regard to counterfeit bills
Apr. 13	Kim Gye-gwan, "I will go to the table immediately after I grab the BDA fund in Macau in my hand."
Apr. 20	Talks between Bush and Hu Jintao by phone - Bush urges China to exercise an influence over North Korea. - Hu Jintao urges the nations participating in the six party talks to have flexibility.

Date	Major Details
Apr. 27-28	Chinese Tang Jiaxuan's visit to North Korea - The Chairman of the National Defense Commission, Kim Jong-il conveys his intention in advance to deny a return to six party talks.
May 19	Kyodo Press reports detection of North Korea's movement regarding preparation for launching Daepodong missiles.
Jun. 1	The North Korean Foreign Ministry proposes an invitation to Assistant Secretary Hill. - If the US has truly made the political decision to implement a Joint Statement, we again invite the US top negotiator of the six party talks to make a visit to Pyoungyang to explain it to us at first hand.
Jun. 1	The spokesman for the White House rejects the invitation of North Korea. - The US will not accept a bilateral negotiation with North Korea, and sticks to the basic position that any negotiation will be held through the six party talks.
Jun. 19	The US Secretary of State, Rice, gives North Korea a warning against its preparation for launching missiles. - North Korea's launching of missiles is to withdraw an obligation of moratorium, a part of the Sep. 19 Joint Statement, and we will regard it as an evident provocative action.
Jun. 20	The North Korean Foreign Ministry highlights that missile launching belongs to its national sovereignty. - It is not subject to any statement like a Joint Statement at the six party talks in September last year. Nobody can blame for it as it is a matter of national sovereignty.
Jun. 21	Deputy Ambassador to the UN, Han Song-ryol, says "missile moratorium is not applied during the cessation of dialogue." - Someone says that test-firing of the missile is against the moratorium but it differs from the fact. We said it to suspend the missile test-firing temporarily during the process of dialogue in order to create an atmosphere of dialogue. - I am aware that the US is concerned about the test-firing of missiles. It is our position to solve the problem through negotiation.
Jul. 4	North Korean Central Communication, "in case that the US makes a preemtive attack, North Korea will retaliate with nuclear wepons."
Jul. 5	North Korea test fires seven missiles in total including a Daepodong.
Jul. 10	Conclusion of Economy and Technology Cooperation Agreement between North Korea and China (Pyungyang)
Jul. 15	UNSC Resolution 1695 is unanimously adopted.
Jul. 25	The US Senate passes the North Korea Nonproliferation Act unanimously.
Sep. 9	Under Secretary of the Treasury, Levy, stresses that the objective of financial sanctions against North Korea is to make North Korea change. - I guess financial sanctions against North Korea exerts a substantive effect but the real aim is to see North Korea change.
Sep. 13	The US House of Representatives Foreign Relations Committee passes the North Korea Nonproliferation Act unanimously.
Sep. 15	The ROK-US summit, agree to make a united effort to prepare for a comprehensive way of approach
Sep. 17	The President of the Supreme People's Assembly (SPA), Kim Young-nam makes a reiterated declaration of the possession of nuclear weapons, and emphasizes it is impossible to return to the six party talks as long as the US continues to take sanctions against North Korea. - It is unreasonable to press us for a return to the negotiation table while the US maintains measures for sanctions against North Korea such as the freeze of North Korean bank's accounts and the warning to financial agencies not to help the North Korea. - North Korea possesses nuclear weapons at a level of deterrence so as to assure peace and stability on the Korean peninsula and in the region.
Sep. 27	Secretary of State, Rice, delivers an ultimatum to North Korea. - The endeavors to let North Korea return to the negotiation table are almost exhausted. North Korea's vice Foreign Minister, Choi Soo-hun - It is out of common sense we attend the meeting in order to discuss nuclear abandonment under US sanction with no rationale.

Date	Major Details
Sep. 28	Former President Kim Dae-jung urges the US/North Korea to have a dialogue as early as possible. - Neo-cons determine the issue of the Korean Peninsula at their own will. - Make North Korea a villain, They appear to go the way of resolving the matter of MD and approve the rearmament of Japan
Oct. 3	The North Korean Foreign Ministry announces a "plan for a nuclear test." - North Korea will make a nuclear test which ensures stability. - North Korea will not make preemtive use of nuclear weapons, and not approve threats with them and their transfer.
Oct. 4	President Roh says: - On the one hand, we endeavor to find a solution, "by carefully examining North Korea's intention," through dialogue not to reach a nuclear test. On the other hand, the measures to make North Korea well aware of the situation faced in case it actually enforces a nuclear test are needed
Oct. 5	Chinese Ambassador to the UN, Wang Guangya, makes a public warning of "facing serious results at the time of North Korea's nuclear test." - If North Korea presses ahead with a nuclear test, it will cope with a very serious result. - Nobody will protect nations which behave badly.
Oct. 5	North Korean Central New Agency reports "the Chairman Kim Jong-il met 500 persons including a battalion commander and participants in a battalion-class political instructors meeting."
Oct. 6	UNSC announced Chairman's Statement that urges North Korea to abandon its nuclear test.
Oct. 8	The Rodong Sinmun introduces Kim Jong-il's chronological remarks as regards military-first politics - We will keep socialism through difficulties and hardship although we die more than one hundred million times. - Let's see who smiles in the end.
Oct. 9	The North Korean Central News announced that a nuclear test succeeded. - An underground nuclear test was carried out safely and successfully. - There was no danger such as the leakage of radiation. - It is a historical event to present our military and people with great inspiration and pleasure who have longed for self-defense capabilities.
Oct. 11	The statement of a spokesman for the North Korean Foreign Ministry implies an "additional nuclear test." - We proved the possession of nuclear weapons in reality owing to the US nuclear threats and sanctions. - A nuclear test is not contradictory to the Sept. 19 Joint Statement. - If the US continues to annoy us, we will take a series of physical response measures.
Oct. 15	Adoption of the UNSC Resolution 1718 - To prohibit the transfer of materials/technologies relevant to the WMDs such as nuclear weapons and ballistic missiles - To prohibit the export of luxuries - To intercept the transfer of nuclear/WMD-related funds - To prohibit the entry of WMD transfer-related figures - Cargo inspection to prevent nuclear/WMD transfer
Oct. 17	The spokesman for the North Korean Foreign Ministry insists that we consider the UNSC/1718 to be a declaration of war and deny it absolutely.
Oct. 18-19	Tang Jiaxuan's visit to North Korea, and his remarks as to the additional nuclear test is reported. - The Chairman of National Defense Commission, Kim Jong-il, "we have no additional nuclear test plan but cannot keep still if the US pressures us."
Oct. 31	Chinese Foreign Ministry announces that the resumption of six party talks is agreed at an informal trilateral meeting among China, US and North Korea.
Nov. 1	The spokesman for North Korean Foreign Ministry expresses that it has decided to return to six party talks on the premise of discussing/resolving the issue of financial sanctions.

North Korea's Missile Development and Specifications

◐ Chronology of North Korea's Missile Develpment

Time	Development/Production Activities
Early 70s	Participation in China's missile development project and acquisition of missile technology(presumption)
1976–81	Introduction of USSR-made Scud-Bs and launchers from Egypt for reverse engineering/development
Apr. 1984	First test-firing of improved Scud-B
May 1986	Test-firing of Scud-C
1988	Operational deployment of improved Scud-B/C
May 1990	First test-firing of the Rodong missile
Jun. 1991	Launching of the Scud-C missile
May 1993	Test-firing of the Rodong missile
Jan. 1994	First identification of the Daepodong-1
1998	Operational deployment of Rodong missiles
Aug. 1998	Test-firing of the Daepodong-1 (North Korea claimed that it had launched a satellite)
Jul. 2006	Test-firing of the Daepodong-2 and launching of Rodong/Scud missiles

◐ Specifications of North Korea's Missiles

Classification	Scud-B	Scud-C	Rodong	Dapodong-1	Daepodong-2
Range (km)	300	500	1,300	2,500	6,700≥
Warhead Weight (kg)	800	600	500	500	650–1,000 (Estimated)
Remarks	Operational deployment	Operational deployment	Operational deployment	Test-firing	Under development

Law 8097

The National Defense Reform Act

Part 1. General Provision

Article 1. (Purpose) The purpose of this Act is to reorganize the ROK Armed Forces as an advanced, strong, and elite armed force by setting up basic doctrines on the promotion of barrack culture, reorganization of military structure and management systems of national defense in order to adapt to the change of conditions of war resulting from the development of science and technology and changes in the domestic and international security environment such as the North Korean nuclear test through the constant national defense reform.

Article 2. (Basic doctrine) The basic doctrine of national defense is to contribute to international peace as well as strengthening national defense by developing the armed forces for the people by undertaking the following tasks:

1. Expansion of the civilian base in national defense policy making.
2. Strengthening of the functions of the Joint Chiefs of Staff and encouraging a balanced development of the Army, Navy, and Air Force considering the future war environment.
3. Reform of the military structure to a technology-intensive one.
4. Renovation of the national defense management system into a low-cost, high-quality system.
5. Establishment of a new military culture to adapt to social change.

Article 3. (Definition) The definition of the terms in this Act are as follows:

1. "National Defense Reform" refers to the improvement and development of the entire national defense management system into a constant process to increase efficiency, to improve effectiveness and to pursue future-orientedness of the ROK Armed Forces based upon information technology and science.
2. "National Defense Management System" refers to a legal and systematic apparatus which manages and operates all the national defense organization including armed forces.
3. "Military Structure" refers to an overall military organization and composition system related to execution of national defense and military mission which interconnects the Army, Navy, and Air Force.

4. "Expansion of the civilian base" refers to the expansion of civilian participation in the national defense decision-making process based upon the principle that the Ministry of National Defense must effectively manage and support the ROK Armed Forces by realizing the national defense policy in the military aspect, while the specialty and expertise of civilians and military personnel are mutually balanced and harmonized.

5. "Force Systems" refer to military power or capabilities with the function and purpose of execution of war. It refers to an entire structure which integrates human resources, weapons system, equipment, military doctrine, military training system and infrastructure.

6. "Jointness" refers to an effective integration and development of capabilities of the Army, Navy, and Air Force in order to maximize the synergy effect of the total combat capability considering the condition of future warfare which employs state-of-the-art military science and technology.

Article 4. (Basic Duty of the Government)

① The Government shall set up a basis and an environment for the constant and consistent undertaking of national defense reform.

② The Government shall make best efforts to secure necessary budget to reform national defense in order to provide a basis and an environment for the national defense reform pursuant to Paragraph 1 and it also shall recruit and manage the necessary personnel in order to maintain the optimal condition.

Part 2. Undertaking National Defense Reform

Article 5. (Establishment of the basic plan for the national defense reform)

① The Minister of the National Defense shall draw up the basic plan for the national defense reform for the innovation of the defense management system, the reform of military structure, and the promotion of military culture in order to effectively undertake national defense reform with the approval of the President.

② The basic plan for the national defense reform shall contain the following items:

1. The purpose of the national defense reform;
2. Implementation plans of the national defense reform by area and task;
3. Issues regarding the national defense operation system and budgets related to the undertaking of national defense reform; and
4. Other major issues in implementing national defense reform.

③ The Minister of National Defense shall formulate and implement a five-year national defense reform plan ("five-year plan") to undertake the basic plan of the national defense reform. Such a plan shall reflect the results of mid-term and final period analysis and evaluation of the security environment such as the development of the ROK-United States alliance, changes in the North-South Korean military relationship, and the performance of the national defense reform during the five years.

④ The necessary issues according to Paragraph 3 to set up the national defense reform plan shall be determined by a Presidential Decree.

Article 6. (The National Defense Reform Committee) The Minister of National Defense shall establish a National Defense Reform Committee ("Committee") to undertake constant and consistent national defense reform and to deliberate major policy issues related to the national defense reform.

Article 7. (Functions of the Committee) The Committee shall deliberate the following issues:

1. Assessment of the internal and external security condition for the national defense reform.
2. Issues related to the establishment of the national defense reform and the basic plan for the national defense reform according to Article 6.
3. Issues related to the budget for the national defense reform.
4. Issues related to the enactment or revision of the laws regarding the national defense reform.
5. Issues related to the settlement of the standing forces and reserve forces.
6. Other Issues brought up for discussion in connection with undertaking national defense reform.

Article 8. (Composition of the Committee)

① The Committee consists of 20 members including 1 chairman.

② The Chairman of the Committee shall be the Minister of National Defense and the members of the Committee shall be nominated by the Chairman among the government officials who are higher than the vice minister level in central government organizations concerned and the members may include specialists on national defense and security.

③ The rules regarding the operation of the Committee shall be provided for in the Presidential Decree.

Article 9. (Report, etc.)

① The Minister of National Defense shall report annually to the National Assembly and to the President overall issues related to the national defense reform such as the previous year's performance of the national defense reform and the future plans.

② The Minister of the National Defense may report to the State Council or the National Security Council if he needs governmental cooperation and support in undertaking the national defense reform.

Part 3. The Advancement of the National Defense Operation System

Article 10. (Establishment of the Civilian Base) The structure of human resource management in the national defense operation system shall be improved for mutual complementation between civilian and military personnel in their specialty.

Article 11. (Composition of the Civil Servant of the Ministry of National Defense)

① The Minister of National Defense shall manage human resources in order to increase the ratio of non-military personnel annually except for the posts that require the expertise of active-duty military personnel.

② Regulations in order to recruit non-military civil servants pursuant to the civilian ratio within the MND according to Paragraph 1 shall be provided for in the Presidential Decree

Article 12. (Confirmation Hearing of the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff)

When the President nominates the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS), the candidate shall be confirmed by the National Assembly.

Article 13. (Expansion of Civilian Personnel)

① The ROK military units and institutions shall expand the use of civilian personnel including civilian employees in order to enhance specialty and continuity of the assignment related to national defense.

② Necessary matters to expand the use of the civilian personnel classified by the area or rank in the ROK military's units and institutions shall be provided for in the Presidential Decree.

Article 14. (Future Direction of National Defense Human Resource Management)

The State shall reorganize military structure into a technology-intensive one in order to meet the future security environment, and it shall strive for

an efficient management and smooth operation of the technology-intensive armed forces, and it shall improve the operation structure of human resources related to national defense.

Article 15. (Recruiting Excellent Military Personnel and Enhancement of Expertise)

① The Minister of National Defense shall secure excellent military manpower and develop an education and training system to enhance the expertise of military personnel.

② The Minister of National Defense shall expand the recruitment of volunteer soldiers who are able to serve in a distant, isolated place including islands or who have expert skills or specialization.

③ The Minister of National Defense may implement a salaried volunteer soldier system in order to recruit solders with excellent skills.

④ The details of implementation of the recruitment and operation of a salaried volunteer soldier system shall be provided under separate legislation.

Article 16. (Expanding Utilization of Female Personnel)

① The Minister of National Defense shall recruit female personnel up to 5 percent of the number of non-commissioned officers and he shall also recruit up to 7 percent of the number of officers in order to strengthen combat capability through the use of outstanding female military personnel by the year 2020.

② In utilizing women soldiers, issues regarding increasing the percentage of the female personnel allotted by each force and each year shall be provided for in the Presidential Decree.

Article 17. (Outsourcing)

① The Minister of National Defense may classify the military support assignments by areas and functions by appointing and operating organs with special responsibility, or entrust such assignments to the private sector.

② Regulations regarding such appointment and entrustment shall be provided under separate legislation.

Article 18. (Promotion of Officers)

① The authority of selecting senior officers to be promoted shall be exercised fairly according to a reasonable procedure.

② The Minister of National Defense shall select the promoted officers according to their talents, ability, and their contribution to the armed forces. He shall ensure balanced promotion opportunity and stable recruitment

officers considering the human resource management circumstances of each officer's educational track.

Article 19. (Appointment of Officers in MND, JCS, etc.)

① The posts of officers who work for the MND, JCS, or combined and joint military units shall be filled with eligible officers equipped with required quality such as joint ability, expertise, etc.

② The Minister of National Defense shall designate posts that require expertise and joint ability as joint posts with the demand of JCS Chairman among the officers within the JCS, joint units and combined units.

③ The Chiefs of Staff of each Service shall provide special qualification such as joint specialty in order for the officers who meet the requirements under Paragraph 1 to have priority for joint posts.

Article 20. (Appointment Recommendation over to the Chiefs of Staff)

The Minister of National Defense shall recommend or second the officers with various career records to the posts of Chiefs of Staff or Vice Chiefs of Staff considering their specialty and branch.

Article 21. (Managing Appointment of an Officer Higher than Lieutenant General)

The general-level officers higher than lieutenant general shall be appointed within the limits of the end-strength. If they fail to be promoted higher than the previous rank after expiry of their tenure or they are fired, they shall be discharged despite Article 44, Paragraph 2 of the Military Personnel Act.

Part 4. Promotion of Military Structure and Force Systems, and Balanced Development of Each Service

Article 22. (Direction for Development) The State shall improve the military structure from a conventional manpower-intensive system into a quality-and technology-intensive one with advanced equipment, which can independently and efficiently gather information so as to respond to threats.

Article 23. (Improvement of Military Structure)

① The upper level of the military organization such as the MND, JCS, Army, Navy and Air Force Headquarters shall improve their organizations and functions in order to exercise their joint combat capabilities at maximum on

top of the civilian base.

② The Minister of National Defense shall strengthen and improve the organization and functions of the JCS in order to nurture its strategic planning and operation execution and to improve joint capability.

③ The Chairman of the JCS shall develop and promote joint operation capability and the related joint military education system, etc. He shall establish an effective communication system with the Chiefs of Staff of each Service with respect to joint operational support. If necessary, he may submit an opinion to the Minister of National Defense on joint operational support and recommend reorganization of the functions of the Army, Navy, and Air Force and joint capability as a result.

④ The Chiefs of Staff of each Service shall maintain and promote their own expertise. They shall reorganize their functions and organizations to promote their joint capability and shall enhance combat capability and operational efficiency of each unit by gradually reducing and reorganizing the mid-echelon command chain.

Article 24. (Development of Weapons and Equipment) Introduction of major weapons and equipment shall be undertaken based on the implementation plans in connection with the reorganization of strategic concepts and military structure.

Article 25. (Restructuring the Scope of the Standing Forces)

① The number of the standing armed forces shall reach a level of 500,000 by the year 2020 in connection with the reorganization of military structure.

② With regard to setting goals by stages to achieve the level pursuant to Paragraph 1 they shall consider the weapons of mass destruction (WMD) possessed by North Korea, assessment of the threat of its conventional weapons, military confidence-building between South and North Korea, and the progress in building peace. The State shall reflect them in the basic plans for national defense reform.

③ The standing forces according to Paragraph 1 shall maintain the best combat readiness for each military unit and the ROK military shall maintain proper composition in order to maximize their joint capability through a balanced development of the Army, Navy, and Air Force.

④ The State shall put its best effort to appropriately compensate discharged officers, non-commissioned officers, and warrant officers. It shall put its best effort to take measures to ensure their stable livelihood.

⑤ Regulations regarding the scope of the standing forces and the composition of each Service for each year persuant to Paragraphs 1 and 3 shall be provided for by the Presidential Decree.

Article 26. (Maintenance of Proper Percentage of Officers, etc.)

① The number of officers, warrant officers and non-commissioned officers shall progressively increase over 40 percent of the numbers of each Service in connection with the reorganization of ROK military into a technology-intensive military system by the year 2020.

② Regulations regarding the goals for each Service and each year in order to reorganize the ratio of officers, warrant officers, and non-commissioned officers shall be provided for under the Presidential Decree.

Article 27. (Restructuring the Scope of the Reserve Forces)

① The State shall improve the reserve force structure and training system. The reserve forces shall modernize their weapons and equipment, so that they can develop into a reserve force ready to replace the standing forces.

② The number of the reserve forces shall be determined in connection with the number of the standing forces by the year 2020.

③ Regulations regarding the development and the scope of the reserve forces for each year shall be provided for under the Presidential Decree.

Article 28. (Transfer of Patrol Missions in Coastal Areas, etc.)

① The patrol missions executed by the military over the coastlines, harbors, airports, national facilities and special patrol area shall be transferred to police authority or the authorities that manage and operate such facilities. The ROK military shall gradually change the system.

② Regulations regarding the transfer of patrol missions shall be provided for under the Presidential Decree.

Article 29. (Balanced Organization of the JCS, etc.)

① The manpower of the JCS shall maximize jointness and joint operational capability through a balanced composition of each Service and through rotating posts.

② The Chairman and the Vice Chairman of the JCS shall be appointed from different Services. One of them shall be appointed by the Army.

③ The common posts of the military personnel within the JCS shall have the same percentage of the Navy and Air Force officers, while the percentage of the Army has to be twice as large as that of the Navy or Air Force. In

addition, the common posts filled with a general-level officer shall be rotated, in principle, among the Services.

④ Regulations regarding the designation of common posts and critical posts within the JCS and the appointment of the common posts in order to maximize jointness and joint military capability pursuant to Paragraph 1 shall be provided for under the Presidential Decree.

Article 30. (Balanced Formation of the MND's Directly Controlled Units, etc.)

① A commander of the joint forces and the MND's directly controlled units commanded by a general-level officer shall be rotated among the Army, Navy, and Air Force. The number of the Navy and Air Force officers on such posts shall be the same, while the percentage of Army officers shall be three times more than the percentage of those of the Navy or Air Force.

② Regulations regarding the rotation of such posts shall be provided for by the Presidential Decree.

Part 5. Improvement and Development of the Barrack Culture

Article 31. (Direction for Development) The Minister of National Defense improve and develop the barrack culture by guaranteeing the basic rights of soldiers on duty and by enhancing the pride of their military service through minimizing the factors of cultural conflict so that the soldiers can execute their assignments properly.

Article 32. (Guarantee of Basic Human Rights of Soldiers, etc.)

① The Minister of National Defense shall improve the quality of the environment of the military service in order to guarantee the basic rights of soldiers.

② The Minister of National Defense shall set up and implement policies in order for soldiers to cultivate sound mentality as a citizen, to enjoy opportunities for self-development, and to promote social recognition for their military service.

③ The Minister of National Defense shall formulate and implement comprehensive plans to improve unit management system and to improve welfare in order for soldiers to undertake missions as proud military personnel.

④ Regulations regarding the guarantee of the basic rights of soldiers and

welfare levels shall be provided for in other legislation.

Addendum 〈No. 8097, Dec. 28, 2006〉

① (The Date of Entry into Force) This Act shall enter into force three (3) months after the day of promulgation.

② (Application to the Management of Appointment of Officers Higher Than Lieutenant General)

The appointment to posts higher than lieutenant general persuant to Article 21 shall be applicable to those who are first promoted to lieutenant general after the implementation of this Act.

[Appendix 7]

The 38th ROK-US SCM Joint Communique

October 20, 2006, Washington, D.C.

1. The 38th Republic of Korea-United States Security Consultative Meeting (SCM) was held in Washington, D.C. on October 20, 2006. U.S. Secretary of Defense Donald H. Rumsfeld and ROK Minister of National Defense Yoon Kwang Ung led their respective delegations, which included senior defense and foreign affairs officials. Before the SCM, the Chairman of the U.S. Joint Chiefs of Staff, General Peter Pace and the Chairman of the ROK Joint Chiefs of Staff, General Lee Sang Hee, presided over the 28th ROK-U.S. Military Committee Meeting (MCM) on October 18, 2006.

2. Secretary Rumsfeld expressed appreciation for the continued deployment of the ROK armed forces in Iraq and Afghanistan and recognized that the ROK armed forces are making a critical contribution to both Iraqi and Afghan reconstruction, helping the respective governments to build a safe and free nation for their people. Minister Yoon assured continuing close consultations between ROK and U.S. forces in this regard. The Minister and the Secretary shared the view that bilateral cooperation between the two countries on the Global War on Terrorism would strengthen the ROK-U.S. Alliance.

3. The Secretary and the Minister expressed grave concern regarding the North Korean nuclear test of October 9, condemned in the strongest terms the North's clear threat to international peace and security as well as the stability of the Korean Peninsula, and demanded that North Korea refrain from any further action that might aggravate tensions. Both sides welcomed and expressed their support for United Nations Security Council Resolution 1718. Secretary Rumsfeld offered assurances of firm U.S. commitment and immediate support to the ROK, including continuation of the extended deterrence offered by the U.S. nuclear umbrella, consistent with the Mutual Defense Treaty. Minister Yoon expressed appreciation for the close cooperation and steadfast support of the U.S. in the face of North Korean intransigence. The Minister and the Secretary observed that their respective Presidents had reaffirmed the shared principle of a peaceful and diplomatic resolution of the North Korean nuclear issue and had agreed to seek a common and comprehensive approach for the resumption and progress of the Six-

Party Talks in the ROK-U.S. Summit Talks held on September 14 of this year. Both the Secretary and the Minister shared the view that North Korea should refrain from provocative actions which could worsen the situation. Both sides also urged North Korea to fully implement the Joint Statement of the Fourth Round of the Six-Party Talks of September 2005, including North Korean abandonment of all nuclear weapons and existing nuclear programs, its early return to the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons (NPT), and full implementation of International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) safeguards agreements.

4. The Minister and the Secretary also shared the common understanding that the North Korean missile launches of July 2006 were a provocative action that constituted a threat to stability on the Korean Peninsula as well as international peace and security. Both sides agreed that North Korea's continued development of WMD and long-range missiles, along with the danger of the proliferation, were a challenge to the ROK-U.S. Alliance. Taking note of United Nations Security Council Resolution 1695, both sides demanded that North Korea suspend all activities related to its ballistic missile programs and agreed to seek peaceful resolution to this issue.

5. The Secretary and the Minister welcomed the continued development of the ROK-U.S. Alliance into a comprehensive, dynamic and mutually beneficial bilateral relationship, based on shared values. Both sides concurred that the ROK-U.S. Alliance remains vital to the future interests of the two nations and that a solid combined defense posture should be maintained in order to secure peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia. Both sides praised the fact that the capabilities of the ROK-U.S. combined forces remain at peak readiness.

6.The Minister and the Secretary agreed that the Alliance, including the U.S. presence in Korea, continues to ensure security on the Korean Peninsula and stability in Northeast Asia. In this regard, both sides recognized the importance of the United Nations Command. Secretary Rumsfeld reaffirmed the U.S. commitment to the security of the ROK and the Mutual Defense Treaty. Minister Yoon further eaffirmed the ROK commitment to mutual defense for the preservation of peace and security.

7.The Minister and the Secretary received reports on the results of the ROK-U.S.

Security Policy Initiative (SPI) discussions and expressed satisfaction that, through close consultations, the ROK and the U.S. are making progress both in pending issues concerning realignment of U.S. forces on the Korean Peninsula and in the joint studies on the development of the future ROK-U.S. Alliance. Both sides agreed to continue and to enhance SPI consultations in 2007 based on the accomplishments of the past two years.

8. The Secretary and the Minister expressed satisfaction with the fact that the ROK and the U.S. reached agreement on the Joint Study on the Vision of the ROK-U.S. Alliance based on the common understanding of the security environment on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia. Both sides also noted that the Study determined that the future Alliance would contribute to peace and security on the Korean Peninsula, in the region, and globally. They agreed that the Study presents a way forward for the future ROK-U.S. Alliance in response to the changing security environment.

9. The Minister and the Secretary reviewed the results of the Command Relations Study (CRS) including the issue of wartime operational control, which has been carried out in accordance with the agreements reached at the 37th SCM. They highly praised the fact that the ROK and U.S. have agreed to the CRS roadmap. Both sides agreed to expeditiously complete the transition of OPCON to the ROK after October 15, 2009, but not later than March 15, 2012. The transition will be based on a mutually agreed and reasoned plan. The Military Committee will report progress on the implementation of this plan annually to the SCM. Both sides agreed to begin immediately to develop a detailed joint implementation plan within the first half of 2007 in accordance with the agreed Roadmap. In noting the target year establishment, Secretary Rumsfeld offered assurance that the transition to a new command structure will be carried out while maintaining and enhancing deterrence on the Korean Peninsula and ROK-U.S. combined defense capabilities. He stated that the U.S. will continue to provide significant bridging capabilities until the ROK obtains a fully independent defense capability. The Secretary further noted that the U.S. will continue to contribute U.S. unique capabilities to the combined defense for the life of the Alliance. Both sides pledged the fullest commitment to meeting agreed-to benchmarks and timelines regarding the transition.

10. The Secretary and the Minister reviewed the progress of relocation of Yongsan

Garrison and other United States Forces Korea (USFK) bases. Both sides expressed satisfaction that the relocation and return of the bases are proceeding despite some challenges, and agreed to exert greater effort to advance the relocation and return of USFK bases as planned.

11. The Minister and the Secretary noted with satisfaction that the modernization of the air-to-ground training range at Jik-do to ensure conditions for the ROK and U.S. air forces is on track, and Secretary Rumsfeld expressed appreciation for the determined efforts of the Korean government in resolving the issue. Minister Yoon acknowledged that ensuring sufficient and sustained training conditions for USFK is of critical importance for combined readiness. Both sides agreed to make the utmost efforts for the early completion of the modernization of Jik-do range so that training conditions for ROK-U.S. combined military forces are guaranteed.

12. The Secretary and the Minister recognized the successful implementation of mission transfers and combined military capability enhancement plans based on the close consultation between the two countries. Both sides also acknowledged positively the successful agreement on the issue of strategic flexibility of Unites States forces based in Korea which was presented in the Joint Statement of Strategic Consultation for Allied Partnership held in January 2006.

13. Both sides positively recognized the work of the SCM subcommittees (the Security Cooperation Committee (SCC), the Defense Technology and Industrial Cooperation Committee (DTICC), and the Logistics Cooperation Committee (LCC)). They noted that the DTICC had been given increased stature by raising the level of the Co-Chairs to the Under Secretary/Vice Minister level. They also acknowledged that as the Alliance evolves, the SCM subcommittee structure must be examined and adjusted to meet current needs, and agreed that the SPI would develop recommendations for consideration at the 39th SCM.

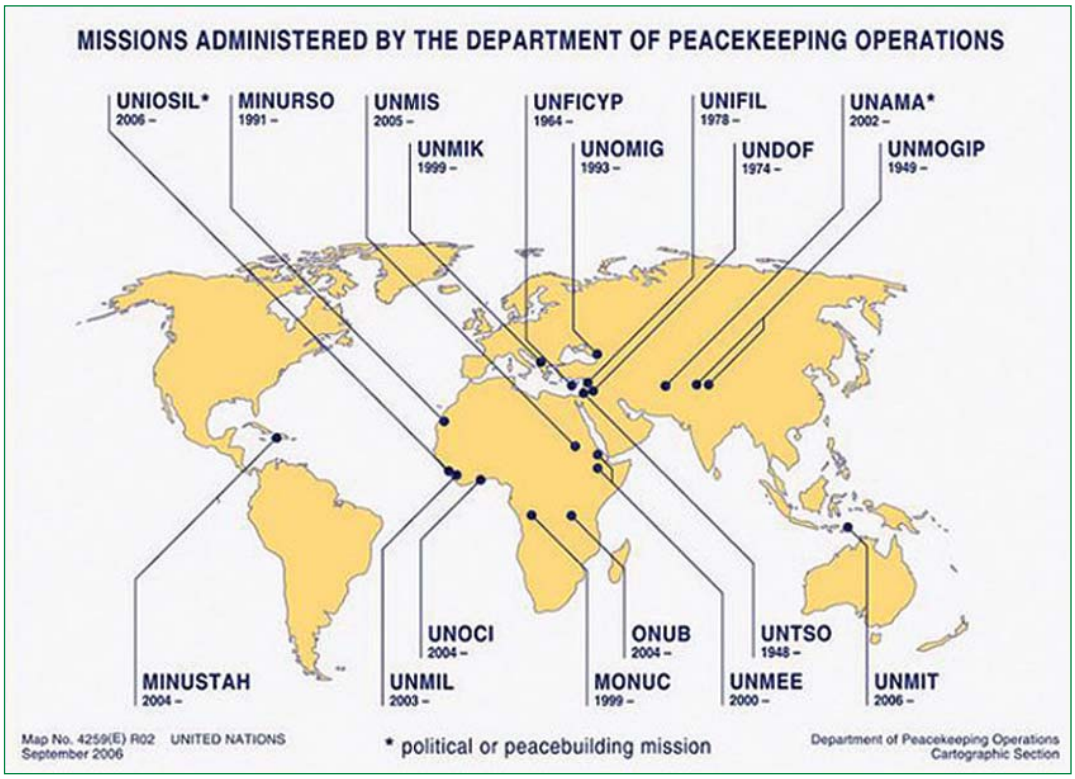
14. The Minister and the Secretary concurred that the 38th SCM and the 28th MCM, through intense discussions on issues pertinent to the realignment of the Alliance and the conclusion of the joint studies on the development of the future ROK-U.S. Alliance, strongly supported the continuous development of a future-oriented Alliance. Both sides agreed to hold the 39th SCM at a mutually convenient time in 2007 in Seoul.

[Appendix 8]

Status of the UN Peacekeeping Operations

◐ The Number of on-going PKO missions corps: 18
(Africa 8 / Middle East 3 / Europe 3 / Asia 3 / Southcentral America)

(As of Oct. 31, 2006)



※ On-going PKO missions corps founded since 1948 : 60 in total

◐ Personnel under Activity: 92,311

o Total troops (including policemen): 76,726 / Donor countries: 110
o International civilian personnel: 4,491
o Local civillian personnel: 9,268
o UN volunteers, etc.: 1,826

※ Death toll under PKO since 1948: 2,302

◐ Operational Status of Worldwide PKO Missions Corps

(As of Oct. 31, 2006)

No.	Name	Founda-tion	Deployed Region/ Main Mission	Personnel of Deployment				Death toll
				Military	Police	Civilian	Total	
1	UNTSO	May 1948	Armistice monitoring on Palestinian region	151		106	257	48
2	UNMOGIP	Jan. 1949	Armistice monitoring on Kashmir region	44		22	66	11
3	UNFYCIP	Mar. 1964	Armistice monitoring on Cyprus	851	65	38	954	176
4	UNDOF	Jun. 1974	Armistice monitoring on Syria/Golan Heights	1,047		36	1,083	42
5	UNIFIL	Mar. 1978	Armistice monitoring on Southern Lebanon	5,147		100	5,247	258
6	MINURSO	Apr. 1991	Armistice monitoring/ election support on Western Sahara	218	4	103	325	14
7	UNOMIG	Aug. 1993	Armistice monitoring on Georgia	121	12	100	233	11
8	UNMIK	Jun. 1999	Support for peace/stability of Kosovo	37	1,870	509	2,416	45
9	MONUC	Nov. 1999	Armistice monitoring/peace settlement on the Democratic Republic of the Congo	17,390	1,107	959	19,456	98
10	UNMEE	Jul. 2000	Armistice monitoring on Ethiopia/Eritrea	2,269		135	2,404	16
11	UNMIL	Sep. 2003	Armistice monitoring on Liberia	14,770	1,076	516	16,362	83
12	UNOCI	Apr. 2004	Peace settlement of Cote d'Ivoire	8,037	949	366	9,352	25
13	MINUSTAH	Jun. 2004	Peace settlement/reconstruction support of Haiti	6,642	1,700	417	8,759	18
14	ONUB	Jun. 2004	Support for peace reconstruction of Burundi	2,440	14	262	2,716	23
15	UNMIS	Apr. 2005	Armistice monitoring on/support for stability of Sudan	9,619	665	742	11,026	11
16	UNMIT	Jul. 2006	Support for peace construction of East Timor	18	463	80	561	
17	*UNAMAI	Mar. 2002	Support for peace construction of Afghanistan	12	8	199	219	
18	*UNIOSIL	Jul. 2006	Support for peace construction of Sierra Leone	10	18	28	56	
Total				68,823	7,951	4,718	81,492	1,105

* UNAMAI & UNIOSIL in UNDPKO have nature of supporting office for peace reconstruction.

Status of the Dispatch of ROK Troops

(As of Nov. 4, 2006)

Classification			Current Personnel	Regions	First Dispatch	Rotation Cycle	Men per Year
Full total			2,577	13			18,323
Iraq (3 nations)	Total		2,333	4			16,175
	Zaytoon Division	Subtotal	2,140			Command (1 year) / Others (6 months)	15,365
		Command/Brigade/ Direct subordinate unit	2,098	Irbil	Apr. 2004		
		MNC-I liaison team	9	Bagdad	Aug. 2004		
		Embassy guard team	17	Bagdad	Dec. 2003		
		Rear support unit	16	Kuwait, Qatar	Sep. 2004		
	58 air transportation group		175		Oct. 2004		737
	MNF-I	Cooperation team	4	Bagdad	Feb. 2003	6 months	24
		Staff	14		Jul. 2003		49
Afgha-nistan (1 nation)	Subtotal		208	2			1,933
	Dasan Unit	HQ	139	Bagdad	Feb. 2003	6 months	1,180
		RRT	8	Bagdad	Aug. 2003		
	924 medical support group		58	(Manas) Bagram	(Feb. 2002) Oct. 2002		729
	CJTF	Cooperation team	2	Bagdad	Jul. 2002	6 months	13
	CFC-A	Staff	1	Kabul	Jul. 2002	6 months	11
US CENTCOM (Tampa, Florida)		Cooperation team	4	Florida	Nov. 2002	1 year	21
		Staff	1				3
CJTF-HOA (1 nation)		Staff	1	Djibouti	Feb. 2003	6 months	8
UN activities (7 nations)	Subtotal		30	6			187
	India/Pakistan Armistice monitoring group		10	Rawalpindi	Oct. 1994	1 year	102
	Georgia Armistice monitoring group		8	Sukhumi	Nov. 1994		64
	Liberia support group		2	Monrovia	Oct. 2003		6
	Afghanistan support group		1	Kabul	Jul. 2003		3
	Burundi support group		2	Bujumbura	Sep. 2004		4
	Sudan support group		7	Sudan	Nov. 2005		8

Comparison of Military Expenditures of Major Countries

Nation	GDP ($ billions)	Defense Budget ($ billions)	Defense Budget Ratio to GDP (%)	Troops (thousands)	Defense Budget Per Capita ($)
ROK	649.5	15.7	2.4	683	23,113
US	11,700.0	455.0	3.9	1,474	308,692
Japan	4,660.0	45.1	1.0	240	187,995
China	1,680.0	62.5	3.7	2,255	27,716
Russia	1.400.0	61.9	4.4	1,037	59,691
UK	2,130.0	49.6	2.3	206	240,905
France	2,000.0	51.6	2.6	255	202,436
Germany	2,670.0	37.7	1.4	285	132,513
Israel	117.0	9.7	8.3	168	57,516
Egypt	76.2	3.5	4.6	469	7,535
Saudi Arabia	236.0	19.3	8.2	200	96,742
Australia	598.0	14.3	2.4	53	270,465
Turkey	297.0	10.1	3.4	515	19,617
Malaysia	117.0	2.3	1.9	110	20,455
Taiwan	304.0	7.5	2.5	290	25,897
Thailand	161.0	1.9	1.2	307	6,295
Singapore	105.0	5.0	4.8	73	69,517

※ Source: *The Military Balance 2005-2006* (London: International Institute for Strategic Studies, Oct. 2005). The ROK data based on government statistics. (Exchange Rate: 1,200 won/$ applied)

[Appendix 11]

Annual Government and Defense Budgets

(Unit : trillion won, %)

Classification	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006
■ Government Budget [1]	99.1801	109.6298	118.1323	120.1394	135.2156	146.9625
(Increase rate)	(11.8)	(10.5)	(7.8)	(1.7)	(12.5)	(8.7)
■ efense Budget	15.3884	16.3640	17.5148	18.9412	21.1026	22.5129
(Increase rate)	(6.3)	(6.3)	(7.0)	(8.1)	(11.4)	(6.7)
• Defense Capacity Improvement Costs	5.2141	5.4756	5.7379	6.2930	7.2987	7.4994
(Increase rate)	(2.4)	(5.0)	(4.8)	(9.7)	(16.0)	(2.7)
(Ratio)	(33.9)	(33.5)	(32.8)	(33.2)	(34.6)	(33.3) [2]
• Ordinary Operating Costs	10.1743	10.8884	11.7769	12.6482	13.8039	15.0135
(Increase rate)	(11.4)	(7.0)	(8.2)	(7.4)	(9.1)	(8.8)
(Ratio)	(66.1)	(66.5)	(67.2)	(66.8)	(65.4)	(66.7) [2]
– Personnel Costs	6.4822	7.0104	7.5788	7.9881	8.5948	9.1967
(Increase rate)	(16.8)	(8.1)	(8.1)	(5.4)	(7.6)	(7.0)
(Ratio)	(42.1)	(42.8)	(43.3)	(42.2)	(40.7)	(40.9)
– Project Costs	3.6921	3.8780	4.1981	4.6601	5.2091	5.8168
(Increase rate)	(3.1)	(5.0)	(8.3)	(11.0)	(11.8)	(11.7)
(Ratio)	(24.0)	(23.7)	(23.9)	(24.6)	(24.7)	(25.8)
■ Defense Budget Ratio						
• Ratio to GDP (%)	2.47	2.39	2.42	2.43	2.62	2.60
• Ratio to Government Budgets (%)	15.5	14.9	14.8	15.8	15.6	15.3

1) Government Budgets: based on General Accounts.

2) The ratio changes after the transfer to DAPA (ordinary operating costs : 66.7 → 74.2%, DCI costs : 33.3 → 25.8%)
- MND control (ordinary operating costs): 15.0 → 16.7 trillion won, DAPA control (DCI costs) : 7.5→5.8 trillion won
- The expenditures, which aren't closely connected with force reinforcement in existing categories, are listed as MND ordinary operating costs including a share of defense expenses, costs for relocating US forces in Korea, and repair/parts spending. Operating costs of DAPA and subsidiary agencies are classified as DCI costs.

◐ National Defense Budget for 2006

(Unit: 100 million won)

Classification	2005 Budget	2006 Budget	Increase (Decrease)	Percentage
Total	211,026	225,129	14,103	6.7
■ Defense Capacity Improvement Costs	72,987	*74,994	2,007	2.7
■ Ordinary Operating Costs	138,039	150,135	12,096	8.8
· Personnel Costs	85,948	91,967	6,019	7.0
· Project Costs	52,091	58,168	6,077	11.7
- Meals	11,186	11,583	397	3.6
- Clothes	2,580	2,498	△82	△3.2
- Unit activity	6,176	7,444	1,268	20.5
- Education and training	1,733	1,815	81	4.7
- Equipment management	5,122	7,738	2,616	51.1
- Material procurement	1,051	1,104	53	5.1
- Facility construction	9,868	11,488	1,620	16.4
- Facility maintenance	3,424	3,832	408	11.9
- Reserve forces	787	737	△50	△6.4
- Research/Auxiliary institutes	1,748	1,932	184	10.5
- Support for stationing forces	3,317	2,932	△385	△11.6
- Basic project costs	4,843	4,860	17	0.4
- Executive agency expenses	256	205	△51	△19.9

※ After the transfer to DAPA, 5.8077 trillion won (25.8%)

◐ Status of Defense R&D Investments

(Unit: 100 million won)

Classification	2005	2006	Increase (Decrease)	
			Amount	%
■ Defense Budget	211,026	225,129	14,103	6.7
■ R&D Costs Ratio to Defense Budget (%)	9,087 4.3	10,595 4.7	1,508 0.4	16.6
• ADD (Agency for Defense Development) R&D	5,312	6,094	782	14.7
• Enterprise-managed R&D	1,672	2,000	328	19.6
• Government Policy R&D	901	1,189	288	32.0
• Operating costs of ADD	1,202	1,312	110	9.2

(Unit: 100 million won)

Classification	Mid-Term Financial Resources Allocation					
	Total	'07	'08	'09	'10	'11
■ Defense Budget	1,507,049	246,967	271,911	298,830	328,414	360,927
■ R&D Costs Ratio to Defense Budget (%)	94,838 6.3	12,902 5.2	16,210 6.0	19,675 6.6	21,970 6.7	24,081 6.7
• ADD (Agency for Defense Development) R&D	56,940	6,905	8,342	10,661	13,650	17,382
• Enterprise-managed R&D	21,320	2,632	3,693	5,332	5,364	4,299
• Government Policy R&D	8,417	2,024	2,634	2,036	1,199	524
• Operating costs of ADD	8,161	1,341	1,541	1,646	1,757	1,876

※2007 Budget: based on the government budget plan

Comparison of Military Capabilities between ROK and DPRK

(As of Dec. 2006)

Classification				ROK	DPRK
Troops (Peace time)			Total	More than 674,000	More than 1,170,000
			Army	541,000	1,000,000
			Navy	68,000	60,000
			Air Force	65,000	110,000
Principal Force Capability	Army	Units	Corps	12 (including Special Warfare Command)	19 (including the Artillery corps, Missile guidance bureau and light infantry instruction guidance bureau)
			Divisions	50	75
			Maneuver Brigade	19	69 (10 Instruction guidance brigades not included)
		Equipment	Tanks	2,300	3,700
			Armored vehicles	2,500	2,100
			Field artillery	5,100	8,500
			MLRS	200	4,800
			Surface-to-surface guided weapons	20 (launchers)	80 (launchers)
	Navy	Surface ships	Warships	120	420
			Landing vessels	10	260
			Mine warfare ships	10	30
			Support vessels	20	30
		Submarines		10	60
	Air Force	Fighters		500	820
		Special aircrafts		80 (including naval aircraft)	30
		Support aircrafts		190	510
		Helicopters		680 (including all helicopters of the 3 services)	310
Reserve Forces (troops)				3,040,000	7,700,000 (including the Instruction guidance units, Worker/Peasant red guard units, and Red youth guard)

※ Naval troops of the South Korea include 25,000 troops of the Marine Corps.
Ground Forces units(Division/Brigade) and equipment include those of Marine Corps.

※ The field artillery of the North does not include infantry regiment's 76.2mm guns.

※ Owing to limitation as for the expression of qualitative assessment, the above table indicates only quantitative comparison at the level of opening to the public.

[Appendix 13]

Combined/Joint Training and Exercises

◐ ROK-US Combined Exercises

Name	Type	Purpose	Contents
UFL	Consolidated command post exercise	• Mastery of the Chungmu plan and OPLAN 5027 execution procedures	• Exercise of combined crisis management procedures • Exercise of wartime switchover procedures • Exercise of US reinforcement force deployment procedures • aExercise of OPLAN 5027 execution procedures
RSOI/ FE	Command post and field training exercises	• Mastery of procedures of deployment of the US reinforcement forces and ensure sustained war-fighting capabilities of the ROK forces • Enhancement of combined/joint operational capabilities in the real area including improvement of combined special operations and air/maritime operations	• Mastery of combined/joint reception, staging, forward movement and integration procedures • Creation and restoration of the combat capabilities of the ROK forces • Exercise of wartime support(WHNS) procedures • Mastery of combined special operation execution procedures • Protection of airports and ports of debarkation, major facilities and strategic points • Maritime maneuver combat units, combined landing, and theater/ guided missiles defense

◐ Joint Exercises/Training (ROK Forces)

Name	Type	Purpose	Contents
Taegeuk Exercise	Command post exercise	• Improvement of independent defense planning and operational execution capabilities of the ROK JCS	• Mastery of wartime operational command and staff activities • Exercise of wartime switchover procedures • Mastery of offensive counter-fire and active deep operational procedures • Improvement of the operation of command post automation systems
Hoguk Training	Command post and Field training exercise	mprovement of corps-level joint operations and integrated combat capabilities with operational plan execution training	• Improvement of operational plan execution capabilities • Verification of joint air-ground-maritime operation systems • Increase of counter-fire/integrated combat capabilities of echelons
Corps-Level FTX	Field training exercise	• Improvement of corps-level integrated war fighting capabilities	• Gripping of operational initiative and decisive combat execution of corps commander • Achievement of Combination, integration and simultaneousness • Execution of Corps-level counter-fire operation • air-ground joint/all-branch cooperative operations • Mastery of Command/communication, combat service support procedures

◐ Other Major Combined Exercises

Name	Type	Participants	Contents
Combined counter-terror Training	Each year	ROK, US, Russia	• Physical training, Overcoming of obstacles • climbing • Counter-terror command fire • Internal cleanup training(building, train, airplane, etc.) • Disposal of private explosion devices • Consolidated mock training
Rim of the Pacific Exercise (RIMPAC)	Even years (June~Aug.)	ROK, US, Australia, Chile, UK, Japan, Canada, Peru	• Offensive/defensive sea exercises • Protection of sea lines of communications(SLOCs) • Naval Blockades and air attacks • Naval gun fire training • Guided missile and torpedo firing
ROK-JAPAN Search and Rescue Training	Every other year (Odd years)	ROK, Japan	• Basic tactical training • Search and rescue training for stranded vessels and aircrafts
Pacific Reach	Every other year	ROK, US, Australia, Japan, Singapore	• Submarine evacuation and rescue training
Combined Landing Operation Training	Each year (with FE)	ROK, US	• Loading/advance unit operation • Tri-dimensional amphibious assault • Maritime maneuver, maritime fire support training • Ground operation(secure/defend coastal bridgehead) • integrated fire operation
Combined Large Force Employment (CLFE)	Quarterly	ROK, US	• Mid-altitude infiltration training • Promotion of survival/mission performance capabilities during infiltration • Arbitrary selection of similar targets, mastery of peace time attack procedures
Cooperative Cope Thunder (CCT)	Every other year (Quarterly)	ROK, Japan, Singapore, Thailand, Australia, UK, France, etc.	• Mission of low-altitude infiltration and freight dropping • tactical assault takeoff/landing training on non-pavement airstrip • Promotion of practical air infiltration capability of pilots/crew

[Appendix 14]

Chronology of Inter-Korean Military Talks

Classification	Date	Place	Details of Major Consultations/Agreements
1st Round of the Inter-Korean Defense Ministers Talks	Sep. 24-26, 2000	Jeju Island	• Adoption of the five-point joint press release of the inter-Korean defense ministers talks
1st Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Nov. 28. 2000	Unification Pavilion	• Consultations about the "(proposed) Inter-Korean Agreement on Military Assurances" - Designation of the timing and scope of the Joint administration Area, locating of the roads, and construction of facilities in the Joint Administration area - Security assurance issue for DMZ construction works - Simultaneous commencement of landmine removal in the DMZ
2nd Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Dec. 5, 2000	House of Peace	• Consultations about the "(proposed) Inter-Korean Agreement on Military Assurances" - Finalization of the routes of the inter-Korean roads - Discussion of the designation and operation of the Joint Administration Area as well as joint regulations - Agreement of signature/entry into force of the agreements regarding safety issues during construction in the ministerial talks - Narrowing the differences regarding the simultaneous commencement of landmine removal in the DMZ
3rd Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Dec. 21, 2000	Unification Pavilion	• The meeting ends in an hour after the South explains and delivers its proposed agreement to the North and the two sides decide to discuss the proposed agreement in ensuring talks - centering around the South's response to the issue regarding the concept of main enemy posed by the North
4th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Jan. 31, 2001	House of Peace	• House of Peace Major details of the discussion: '(proposed) Inter-Korean Agreement on Military Assurances' - Designation and operation of the Joint administration area - Mine removal in the DMZ, method of road/railway reconnection works, and the method of contact and communication between the military personnel in charge of the construction sites - Security on construction personnel/equipments and safety assurance issues
5th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Feb. 8, 2001	Unification Pavilion	• Agreement on military assurances for designation of the Joint Administration Area in the East/West Coast Districts and the Construction of Railways and Roads Connecting the South and North("Military Assurance Agreement") - Signature/Entry into force was delayed on the excuse of the "concept of main enemy"
6th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Sep. 14, 2002	House of Peace	• Adoption of the Military Assurance Agreement (Based on the 5th round of talks, including Donghae line) → agreed to sign/exchange/come into force agreement through additional two rounds of talks (16/17 Sep.)
Chief Delegates' Contact for the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Sep. 16, 2002	Unification Pavilion	• Confirmation and initial exchange of the text of the Military Assurance Agreement, and discussion of the procedures of the 7th Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks
7th Round of the inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Sep. 17, 2002	House of Peace	• Exchange and effectuation of the Military Assurance agreement
Chief Delegates' Contact for 1st Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Oct. 3, 2002	Unification Pavilion	- Confirmation of North Korea's position on the 2nd round of the Inter-Korean Defense Ministers Talks - Exchange/discussion of the mutual construction plans by timeline and route diagrams for the reconnection of railways and roads - Issue to support of communication equipments
Chief Delegates' Contact for 2nd Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Oct. 11. 2002	House of Peace	- (Prorosed) agreement regarding the convocation of the 2nd round of the Inter-Korean Defense Ministers Talks - Consultations regarding balanced construction works in the DMZ/supply of demining equipment in the DMZ of road/railway construction

Classification	Date	Place	Details of Major Consultations/Agreements
Chief Delegates' Contact for 3rd Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Oct. 16, 2002	Unification Pavilion	- (Proposed) agreement regarding the convocation of the 2nd round of the inter-Korean defense ministers talks - Consultations regarding balanced construction works in the DMZ/supply of demining equipment in the DMZ of road/railway construction
Chief Delegates' Contact for 4th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Oct. 25, 2002	House of Peace	- Agreement, in principle, on the wording of the joint press release and convocation of the 2nd round of the inter-Korean defense ministers talks - Discussion of matters regarding verification of balanced construction of road/railway construction, joint survey and communication line connection for the Donghae Line
Chief Delegates' Contact for 5th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Nov. 13, 2002	Unification Pavilion	- Consultations over such issues as verification of balanced construction for inter-Korean railway/road reconnection, joint measurement and communication line connection for the Donghae Line * Regarding the issue to hold the 2nd round of the Inter-Korean defense ministers talks, the North refuses to comment, saying only that it is "difficult for administrative reasons"
Chief Delegates' Contact for 6th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Dec. 23, 2002	House of Peace	Consultations over the (proposed) makeshift road passage agreement regarding the Gyeongeui Line and Donghae Line, and connection of the communication lines concerning the Donghae Line
Chief Delegates' Contact for 7th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Jan. 27, 2003	Unification Pavilion	Adoption and effectuation of the "Provisional Agreement on Military Assurances for the makeshift roads in the Joint Administration Area in the East and West Coast Districts"
Chief Delegates' Contact for 8th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	June 4, 2003	House of Peace	Agreement on mutual visits to the construction sites for inspections (Date of visit : June 11/Number of personnel : 10 persons each for the east and west coast districts)
8th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Sep. 17, 2003	Unification Pavilion	- Adoption and effectuation of the supplementary agreement to the 'Provisional Agreement on Miliatry Assurances for Passage of Makeshift Roads in the Joint Administration Area in the East and West Coast Districts' - Agreement of size of guard post, inquiry of possibility of support for connecting communication line of Donghae line to Onjeongri
9th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Contact	Nov. 14, 2003	House of Peace	- Expression of mutual positions on the proposed "Agreement on Installation and Operation of Guard Posts in the Joint Administration Area" - Consultation of date for the contact between persons in charge of communication in relation to connection of communication lines of Donghae line
10th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Contact	Nov. 28, 2003	Unification Pavilion	- Bridging the gap regarding the "Agrement on the Installation and Operation of Guard Posts in the Joint Administration Area" - The South and the North agree that some disputed provisions will be discussed and revised in the form of document exchange and that the reelvant agreement be signed and effectuated at a plenary meeting
9th Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks	Dec. 23, 2003	House of Peace	Exchange and effectuation of the "Agreement on Installation and Operation of Guard Posts in the Joint Administration Area ion the East and West Coast Districts"
1st Round of the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	May 26, 2004	Mt. Geumgang	Expression of mutual positions regarding measures to prevent accidental armed conflict in the West Sea and to stop propaganda activities and remove propaganda tools from the DMZ
2nd Round of the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	June 3-4, 2004	Mt. Seorak	Adoption and effectuation of the "Agreement on the Prevention of Accidental Naval Clashes in the West Sea, and the Cessation of Propaganda Activities and the Elimination of Propaganda Apparatus from the DMZ"

※ 1st Round of the Inter-Korean Defense Ministers Talks (Sep. 24-26, 2000)
- ROK: Defense Minister Cho Sung-tae plus 4 delegates
- North Korea: Minister of People's Armed Forces Kim Il-cheol plus 4 delegates

※ 1st Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks (Nov.28, 2000)~ Chief Delegates' Contact for 3rd Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks (Oct.16, 2002)
- ROK: Deputy Chief of Arms Control, Army Brigadier General Kim Gyeong-deok plus 4 delegates
- North Korea: Army Colonel Yoo Young-cheol plus 4 delegates

※ Chief Delegates' Contact for 3rd Round of the Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks (Oct. 25, 2002)
- ROK: Head of North Korean Policy Division, Army Colonel Mun Seong-muk plus 4 delegates
- North Korea: Army Colonel Yoo Young-cheol plus 4 delegates

※ 1st / 2nd Rounds of the inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks (May 26, 2004 / June 3-4, 2004)
- ROK: Commodore Park Jeong-hwa plus 4 delegates
- North Korea: Army Major General Ahn Ik-san plus 4 delegates

Classification	Date	Place	Details of Major Consultations/Agreements
1st Working-Level Delegates' Meeting for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	June 10-12, 2004	Gaeseong	Adoption and effectuation of the "Agreement annexed" to the Agreement on the prevention of accidental naval clashes in the West Sea, and the cessation of propaganda activities and the elimination of propaganda apparatus from the DMZ
2nd Working-Level Delegates' Meeting for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	June 29-30, 2004	Paju	- Exchange of the list of subjects for the first-stage propaganda apparatus removal and mutual confirmation/assessment, and agreement to discuss some differences at a later date - Proposal by the South suggesting measures to improve matters pertaining to the West Sea
Working-Level Delegates' Meeting / Chief Working-Level Delegates' Contact for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	July 5, 2004	Gaeseong	- Consultation over differences regarding the subjects of first-stage propaganda apparatus removal, agreement to implement second-stage works - ROK, urge to consult improve measures to prevent accidental clashes in the West Sea
3rd Working-Level Delegates' Meeting for the inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	July 20, 2005	House of Peace	- Consultation over differences regarding the subjects of second-stage propaganda apparatus removal - Consultation over initiating third-stage propaganda apparatus removal (July25~Aug.13) - Agreement to setting up of the west sea communication liaison office(as of Aug.13) - ROK, suggest of "Supplementary Agreement Pertaining to Improvement Measures to Prevent Accidental Clashes in the West Sea"
"4th Working-Level Delegates" Meeting for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	Aug. 12, 2005	Unification Pavilion	- Consultation over differences regarding the subjects of third-stage propaganda apparatus removal - Attempt to consult the date to hold 3rd Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks * North Korea, rejection of consulting the date with claims to suspend UFL
Working-Level Delegates' Meeting / Chief Working-Level Delegates' Contact for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	Nov. 3, 2005	House of Peace	- Consultation over agenda, procedures and date of third Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks * North Korea, request the South to join national cooperation in linkage of date of talks with six party talks - Agreement to consult over concluding 'Agreement on military assurance of railway/road passage'
Working-Level Delegates' Meeting / Chief Working-Level Delegates' Contact for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	Feb. 3, 2006	Unification Pavilion	- Agreement on holding 3rd Round of the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks(North Korea, to make modified proposal on the venue from Mt. Baekdu to Unification Pavillion) - Delivery of 'Agreement on military assurance of railway/road passage(draft)' to North Korea
3rd Round of the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	Mar. 2-3, 2006	Unification Pavilion	- ROK, to make proposals on prevention of maritime clashes in the West Sea and establishment of Joint fishing area, and conclusion of 'Agreement on military assurance of railway/road passage' - North Korea, insistence of advance consultation over NLL in the West Sea
4th Round of the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	May 16-18, 2006	House of Peace	- ROK, to make a proposal on Inter-Korean Military Working-Level Talks for the conclusion of "Agreement on military assurance of railway/road passage," * North Korea, rejection on the execuse of not agenda for Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks - ROK, Expression of the intention to discuss in the Inter-Korean Defense Ministers Talks on the basis of following two principles as regards NLL in the West Sea ① Respect/observe NLL as agreed in the Basic Agreement ② Comprehensive implementation as for agreed items of military area in the Basisc Agreement - North Korea, denial with the claim about advance solution of the fundamental problem, namely, NLL in the West Sea
Working-Level Delegates' Meeting / Chief Working-Level Delegates' Contact for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks	Oct. 2, 2006	Unification Pavilion	- North Korea, request for prevention of recurrence pertaining to distribution of leaflets against the North and order of passage in the East/West coast districts - ROK, to raise military assurance measures for economic cooperation project and expansion of confidence building

※ 3rd/4th Rounds of the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks (March 2-3, 2006 / May 16-18, 2006)
- ROK: Army Major General Han Min-gu plus 4 delegates
- North Korea : Army Lieutenant General Kim Young-cheol plus 4 delegates

※ Working-Level Delegates' Meeting / Chief Working-Level Delegates' Contact for the Inter-Korean General-Level Military Talks
- ROK: MND, Army Colonel Mun Seong-muk plus 4 delegates
- North Korea : Army Colonel Yoo Young-cheol plus 4 delegates

* North Korea; Participation of Lieutenant Colonel Park Ki-yong as acting chief in the Chief Working-Level Delegates' Contact

THe 37th ROK-US SCM Joint Communique

October 21, 2005, Seoul

1. The 37th Republic of Korea-United States Security Consultative Meeting (SCM) was held in Seoul on October 21, 2005. ROK Minister of National Defense Yoon Kwang-ung and U.S. Secretary of Defense Donald H. Rumsfeld led their respective delegations, which included senior defense and foreign affairs officials. Before the SCM, the Chairman of the ROK Joint Chiefs of Staff, General Lee Sang Hee and representing the Chairman of the U.S. Joint Chiefs of Staff, the Senior U.S. Military Officer Assigned to Korea, General Leon LaPorte, presided over the 27th ROK-U.S. Military Committee Meeting(MCM) on October 20, 2005.

2. Secretary Rumsfeld expressed his appreciation for the continued deployment of the ROK armed forces in Iraq and Afghanistan and recognized that the ROK armed forces are making a critical contribution to both Iraqi and Afghan reconstruction, helping to build a safe and free nation for their people. The Minister and the Secretary shared the view that the bilateral cooperation on the Global War on Terrorism between the two countries would better enhance the ROK-U.S. Alliance. Moreover, both leaders pledged to maintain a seamless information exchange system to sustain a vigilant counter-terror posture at the Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation(APEC) Economic Leaders' Meeting, scheduled to be held in Busan, on November 18-19, 2005.

3. Minister Yoon Kwang Ung offered his condolences and encouragement on behalf of all Koreans for the severe damage caused in the United States by Hurricanes Katrina and Rita. Minister Yoon expressed the ROK government's sincere commitment to provide strong support for full recovery, while also wishing for an early recovery to allow the local residents to return to their normal lives. Secretary Rumsfeld expressed his appreciation for the assistance of the ROK government and the Korean people.

4. The Minister and the Secretary expressed their hope that the North Korean military threat will diminish gradually through advancements in the Six-Party Talks and efforts in inter-Korean reconciliation and cooperation. However, both sides noted that North Korea's continued development of WMD, and long-range missiles, along with the danger of the proliferation of those weapons and technologies, are causes of significant concern for the ROK-U.S. Alliance and the international community.

5. The Minister and the Secretary welcomed North Korea's commitment to abandon all nuclear weapons and existing nuclear programs, to return, at an early date, to the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons(NPT), and to IAEA safeguards at the 4th round of the Six-Party Talks held last September. The Minister and the Secretary expressed their earnest hope that the Joint Statement in Beijing would facilitate the verifiable nuclear dismantlement in order to realize the denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula at the earliest opportunity.

6. The Minister and the Secretary welcomed the development of the ROK-U.S. Alliance into a comprehensive and dynamic bilateral relationship. Both sides concurred that the ROK-U.S. Alliance remains vital to the interests of the two nations and that a solid combined defense posture should be maintained in order to secure peace and stability on the Korean Peninsula and in Northeast Asia. Both sides praised the fact that the ROK-U.S. combined force capability

remains at peak readiness.

7. The Minister and the Secretary agreed on the need to maintain a U.S. troop presence in the ROK to ensure security on the peninsula and stability in Northeast Asia. Both sides recognized the importance of the United Nations Command's role in maintaining the Armistice Agreement. Secretary Rumsfeld reaffirmed the U.S. commitment to the security of the ROK, and to the continued provision of a nuclear umbrella for the ROK, consistent with the Mutual Defense Treaty. Similarly, Minister Yoon reaffirmed the ROK commitment to mutual defense.

8. The Minister and the Secretary reviewed the progress of relocation of Yongsan Garrison and the realignment of other United States Forces Korea (USFK) bases. Both sides agreed to exert greater effort to advance the relocation of USFK bases as planned, while noting that the successful completion of the relocation will serve as the cornerstone for the future of the ROK-U.S. Alliance.

9. Secretary Rumsfeld recognized the successful implementation of mission transfers and combined military capability enhancement plans based on the close consultation between the two countries, and assessed with satisfaction that the ROK is assuming an increased role in its national defense. The Minister and the Secretary agreed to appropriately accelerate discussions on command relations and wartime operational control. Both sides also reaffirmed the continuing importance of the strategic flexibility of U.S. forces in the ROK and pledged to continue discussions on the issue based on the spirit of the Alliance.

10. The Minister and the Secretary received reports on the results of the "ROK-U.S. Security Policy Initiative" discussions and expressed satisfaction with the fact that pending issues are being resolved through these close consultations, and that the Joint Study on the Vision of the ROK-U.S. Alliance will produce an in-depth analysis of the future of the Alliance. Both sides agreed to continue SPI consultations in 2006 based on the successes of this year.

11. The Minister and the Secretary welcomed the conclusion of the Special Measures Agreement for 2005-2006, and assessed that defense burden sharing contributes to strengthening combined defense capabilities on the Korean Peninsula. Secretary Rumsfeld acknowledged the ROK contributions to sharing non-personnel stationing costs for U.S. forces in the ROK.

12. Minister Yoon Kwang-ung explained the background, process, and future direction of the draft ROK Defense Reform Plan. Secretary Rumsfeld expressed his understanding of the basic approach of the ROK's draft Defense Reform Plan and conveyed the United States' support. Minister Yoon further explained that the proposal, in line with the 'Cooperative Self-reliant Defense Plan', is being pursued to transform the ROK armed forces into a technology-oriented, qualitative defense force. The Minister and the Secretary shared the view that the draft plan will support the future development of the Alliance.

13. The Minister and the Secretary concurred that the 37th SCM and the 27th MCM provided a valuable opportunity to further strengthen the ROK-U.S. security Alliance, by discussing issues pertinent to present and future security relations. Both sides agreed to hold the next SCM at a mutually convenient time in 2006 in Washington D.C.

Major International Arms Control Regimes/Organizations

◐ NPT (Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty)

Key Elements	• Promote peaceful use of nuclear energy • Prohibit acquisition/transfer/assistance of nuclear weapons-related technology and materials • Oblige to conclude safeguard agreements at the time of joining the NPT that stipulates the prevention of nuclear proliferation
Chronological Process	• Ireland submitted an interim resolution regarding the danger of proliferation of nuclear weapons to the UN General Assembly(1958) • The UN resolved to have ENDC(consisting of 18 nations) enact treaty principles(1966) • Entered in to force with an initiative of the US, Soviet Union and UK
Member States	• 189 nations (as of Oct. 2006) ※ Major non-member states : Israel, India, Paskistan, etc. • ROK(1975: ratified), North Korea(1985: ratified, Mar. 1993: declared its withdrawal, Jun. 1993: reserve its withdrawal, Jan. 2003: declared its withdrawal)
Recent Developments	• Decide indefinite extension of NPT at the Review Conference in May, 1995 ※ Hold the NPT Review Conference every 5 years • Failure to produce outcome document at the 7th NPT Review Conference in May 2005 due to differences in views between nuclear/non-nuclear states, and Western/NAM states – Reconfirm the efficiency and need of NPT as a pillar of nuclear non-proliferation regime
Future Direction	• ROK's active support to nuclear non-proliferation regime and urge North Korea to return to the NPT • Promote technical cooperation internationally without limitations for peaceful use of nuclear energy • Non-nuclear state's request for substantive nuclear disarmament toward nuclear states is increasing

◐ IAEA (International Atomic Energy Agency)

Key Elements	• Provide technical support and cooperation for the promotion of the peaceful use of atomic energy • Carry out the verification on military use of nuclear materials stipulated in the NPT by virtue of concluding "Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement" with member states • Report to the UN General Assembly and UNSC at the time of occurrence of non-implementation (namely, conflicts) of safe guards agreement • Comprise conference of states parties (every year), board committee (every quarter), secretariat(6 departments under the Director General)
Chronological Process	• Former US president Eisenhower proposed "Atoms for Peace" in the 8th UN General Assembly • Adopt draft IAEA Charter in the 11th General Assembly • IAEA Charter comes into force accordingly as 26 nations, such as the US, UK, France and Soviet Union, deposited ratification documents (1957) – consists of 23 main articles and annexes (stipulates purpose, function, organization and main activities of IAEA) • Adopt "Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement" (1970) – Apply the Safe Guard Agreement to all nuclear energy activities of the NPT member states (non-nuclear weapons states) • Adopt an Additional Protocol to implement strengthened safeguard regimes (1977)
Member States	• 140 nations (as of 2006) • ROK (1957: joined), North Korea (1974: joined, but withdrew from the organization in 1994 on the excuse that the IAEA board committee adopted the resolution to take sanctions against North Korea
Recent Developments	• IAEA takes a lead in enactment of lots of international regimes to enhance the safety of atomic energy • Adopt "Joint convention on the safety of spent fuel management and on the safety of radioactive wastes management, Vienna (1997)" and "Vienna convention on supplementary compensation for nuclear damage (1997)" • Have expressed concerns about North Korea's non-implementation of safeguards agreement in the IAEA Conference of states parties/Board committee and General Assembly, and press the North Korea for comprehensive implementation of the agreement since 1999 • Underscored the significance of IAEA role for strengthening safeguards and combating nuclear terrorism in the 47th IAEA annual conference of states parties in 2003. • Adopted the resolution against North Korea that re-declares the position of international society which does not accept the North Korean nuclear program • IAEA inspection regarding the experiment of nuclear materials conducted in the ROK was determined in the 49th IAEA annual conference of states parties in 2005. Then in the course of inspection, the ROK explain the government's efforts regarding the strengthening of international nuclear non-proliferation regime and the security of nuclear transparency.
Future Direction	• Strengthen international cooperation so as to control nuclear materials • Promote technical cooperation internationally without limitation for peaceful use of nuclear energy • Press the countries that do not sign and ratify safeguards agreement and additional protocol for the early signature and ratification • Urge North Korea to early implementation of the safeguard agreement

◐ MTCR (Missile Technology Control Regime)

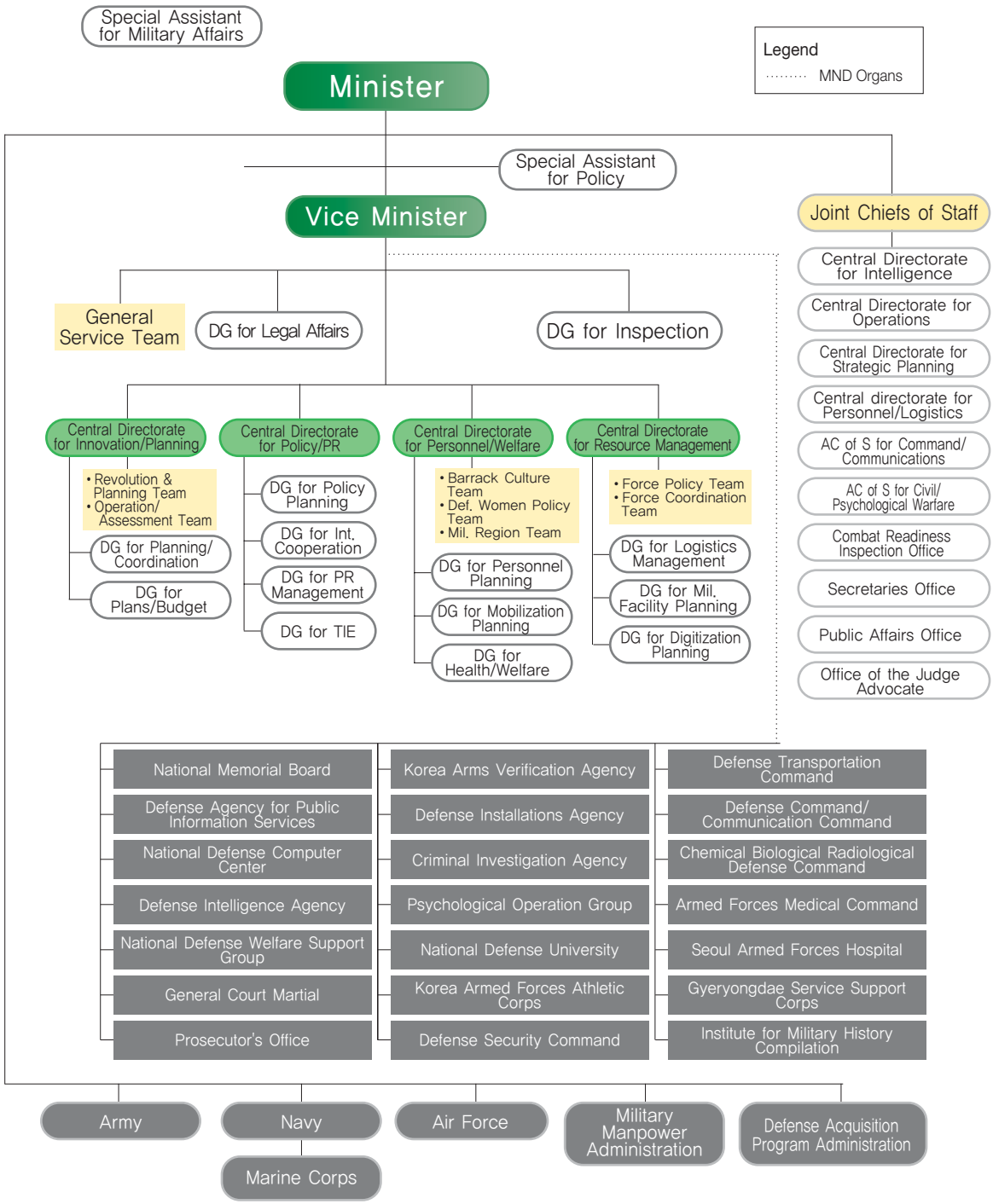
Key Elements	• The international regime to control voluntarily the export/transfer of Rocket/UAV able to deliver WMD and related equipments/technologies • Control items – Control export or technical transfer on the complete goods/production facilities/major infra-system related to rocket/UAV over the range of 300 km and the payload of 500 kg (Category I) – Rocket system : Ballistic missile, SLV, scientific observation rocket – UAV : Cruise missile, Unmanned target aicraft, unmanned patrol aircraft. – Major infra-system : rocket stage, reentry vehicle, propulsion equipment, guidance/steering equipment. – Control export or technical transfer on parts/technologies for Category I and rocket/UAV systems below the range of 300 km and the payload of 500 kg (Category II). – Propellant, composite materials, navigation equipment, guidance/operation equipment, avionics equipment,equipment/facilities or launch support, test equipment/technology. • Guidelines, comprising 7 main articles and 20 technical and equipment annexes, describes the scope of regulation on detailed items • Category I: 2 areas • Category II: 18 areas
Chronological Process	• Increased concern about global proliferation of missiles after World War II • Entry into force of Former President, Regan's "National Security Decision Directive 70" • Direct seeking for measures to prevent ballistic missile proliferation • Established MTCR centering around G-7 countries under the US initiative (April. 1987)
Member States	• 34 nations (as of Nov. 2006) ※ Countries such as Australia, Russia and Brazil including Spain which joined first in 1989 participated. The issue concerning Chinese participation in MTCR among 12 candidates was the most arguable question and thus, Chinese participation was not accepted thanks to the objection of the US, Japan and UK in spite of Russian support (consensus system to be applied) • ROK (Mar. 26, 2001 : joined), North Korea (not joined)
Recent Developments	• Enact HCOC to restrict missile proliferation by non-member states and be in the middle of receiving the view of individual countries including non-member states • Be in process of works for new definition of the terminologies with regard to control items and coordination of related specifications fitted to the progress of science/technology and the change of security environments ※ As the international society, at present, perceives the proliferation of technology related to missiles as an important security issue, it is expected that MTCR will play an increasing role for missile non-proliferation as a key institution
Future Direction	• Continue to make efforts to be developed as a consolidated control organization to be able to restrict missile proliferation including non-member states • Need to focus on diplomatic efforts to improve international prestige in missile non-proliferation field as a MTCR member state • Strengthen the efforts to make North Korea relinquish its long-range missile program and participate in MTCR

◐ WA (Wassenaar Arrangement)

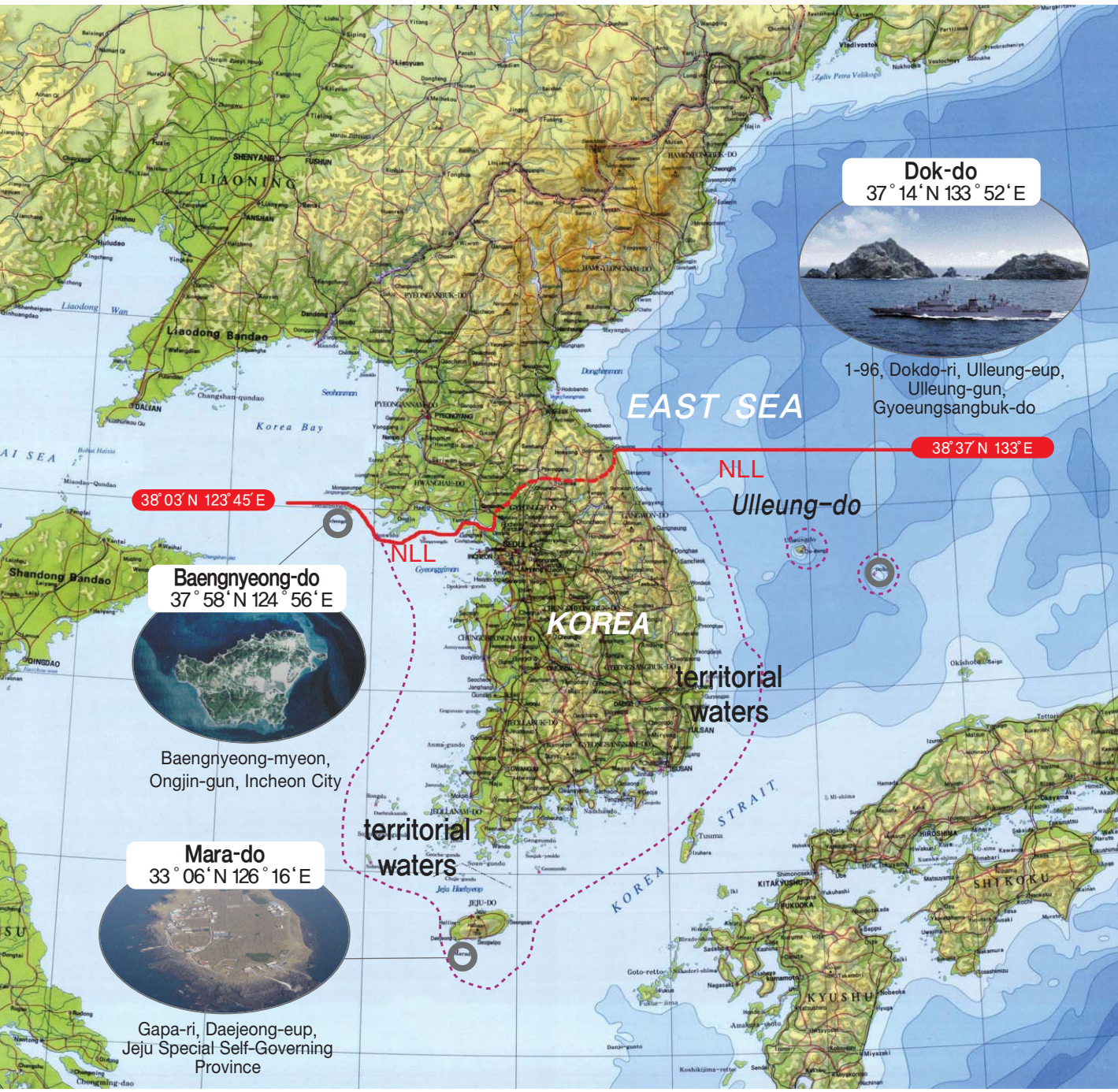
Key Elements	• The aim is to contribute regional/international security and stability by virtue of strengthening transparency and responsibility for the transfer of conventional weapons and dual-use items and their related technologies. • Export Control Items – Conventional Weapons: Items (tanks, artillery guns, etc.) pursuant to "UNRCA" and specific weaponry being noticed voluntarily (code equipment, radar, etc.) – Dual-use goods and technologies: precision machine tool, super computer, etc. • Method of Control – Each member state controls them by means of enacting a domestic law, and decides to select items and admit exports independently. – Obliged to exchange export-related information. Pursue cooperation between member states and consistency on export control.
Chronological Process	• COCOM member states such as the US, UK and France disorganized the existing COCOM and agreed to establish a new multilateral export control system in Nov. 1993. • Former communist countries like Russia and Hungry participated in the regime (Sept. 1995). • Delegates from 33 nations gathered to launch Wassenaar Agreement regarding the control of conventional weapons and dual-use items and their related technologies (Dec. 1996).
Member States	• 40 nations joined (as of April 2006) • ROK (Nov. 1996: joined), North Korea (not joined)
Recent Developments	• Agreed to the restriction on MANPADS, Guidelines on weapons brokering, expansion of information exchange on weapons trade, denial notice on export of conventional weapons, restriction of production abroad without permission, and expansion of WA participants. • Discuss ITT control, safeguards on end-use and control lists on new technologies.
Future Direction	• Strengthen individual country's export control regime so as to prevent the transfer WA control items to terrorist organizations and states of concern • Reinforce activities in regard to non-member states such as China

Organization of the Ministry of National Defense (MND)

(As of June 30, 2006)



Our territorial soil, waters and sky to be defended by the ROK Armed Forces



5397
820